

BRACING: Generally steel strap attached diagonally or at right angles to one or more surfaces of the framing to resist racking and rotation forces. (S.E.L. & P.B.)

BRIDGING: Generally track or channel shapes to provide lateral support about the weak axis and stabilizes against twisting, rotation and deflection. (S.E.L. & P.B.)

CHANNELS: Hot-rolled or cold-rolled steel section, used for furring and carrying channels or runners, and as studs. (S.E.L. & P.B.)

FRAMING, PRIMARY: Steel studs, top and bottom track of various configurations, size, gauge, etc. (S.E.L. & P.B.)

FRAMING, SECONDARY: Hot- or cold-rolled channel shapes, straps, angles or rods used to brack, bridge, stiffen or furr-out the primary framing. (S.E.L. & P.B.)

FURRING: Strips of metal (or wood) applied to a wall or other surface to make it level or plumb, to form an air space, or to provide a fastening surface for covering materials. (S.E.L. & P.B.)

GUAGE (GAGE): The thickness measure of sheet metal or the diameter of wire. (S.E.L. & P.B.)

LEG: Synonomous with stud flange. (S.E.L.&P.B)

STUD: A cold-formed vertical member, load or non-load bearing. When installed in a series forms a frame to support covering materials. (S.E.L. & P.B.)

STUD, C: Has a second set of flanges parallel to the web. (S.E.L. & P.B.)

STUD, DOUBLE: Parallel flanges project in opposite directions from a common web. (S.E.L. & P.B.)

STUD, FLANGE: A projecting rim or rib, at right angles to the web, parallel to the covering material, for strength and for attachment of covering materials. (S.E.L. & P.B.)

STUD, PUNCHED: Holes or punch-outs of various shapes and sizes, spaced uniformly along the centerline of the web to reduce weight and accommodate horizontal pipe or wire passage in the core space. (S.E.L. & P.B.)

STUD, WEB: The middle plate or section perpendicular to the flanges and plane of the wall. (S.E.L. & P.B.)

STUD, WIDE FLANGE: Flange width greater than 1" providing greater bearing surface for covering material. (S.E.L. & P.B.)

SHEATHING: Any rigid sheet or board form material capable of being attached to the exterior surface of steel framing, prior to application of the finishing materials. (S.E.L. & P.B.)

SHOE: A formed metal section used in attaching metal studs to floor and ceiling tracks; also the end section of a channel turned to an angle (usually 90°) to permit attachment, generally to other channels. (S.E.L. & P.B.)

TRACK:

Ceiling Track, Ceiling Runner Track or Ceiling Runner: A formed metal section, anchored to the ceiling, into which metal studs for hollow or solid partitions are set; a formed metal section to which lath is attached for studless partitions; a metal channel or angle used for anchoring the partition to the ceiling. (S.E.L. & P.B.)

Floor Track, Floor Runner Track or Floor Runner: A formed metal section, anchored to the floor, into which metal studs for hollow or solid partitions are set; a formed metal section into which lath is inserted for studless partitions; a wood member into which lath is inserted for studless partitions; a metal channel used for anchoring the partition to the floor. (S.E.L. & P.B.)

CLICK ANYWHERE in THIS PAGE to the
CONSTRUCTION DICTIONARY at InspectApedia.com

- ABRASION:** The surface loss of a material due to frictional forces. (SEL & PB)
- ABSORPTION:** The process by which a liquid is drawn into and tends to fill permeable pores in a porous solid body, also the increase in weight of a porous solid body resulting from the penetration of a liquid into its permeable pores. (SEL & PB)
- ACCELERATOR:** An admixture that will hasten the setting action of stucco, plaster, or mortar. (GA)
- ACCESSORIES:** Subordinate materials or any supplementary material necessary for the proper application and performance of primary products. (SEL & PB)
- ACOUSTICAL:** Relating to, pertaining to, or associated with sound, but not having its properties or characteristics. (GA)
- ACOUSTICAL PLASTER & PLASTIC:** Sound absorbing finishing materials mill-formulated for application in areas where a reduction in sound reverberation is desired. These materials usually are applied to a minimum thickness of $\frac{1}{2}$ " and generally provide a noise reduction coefficient of at least .45 decibels. (GA)
- ACOUSTICS:** The science of sound, including its production, transmission, and effects. (SEL & PB)
- ADDITIVE:** An admixture added to a product during manufacturing process- not at the job-site. See ADMIXTURES. (SEL & PB)
- ADDITION:** A material that is inter-ground or blended in limited amounts into a hydraulic cement during manufacture either as a "processing addition" to aid in manufacturing and handling the cement or as a "functional addition" to modify the use properties of the finished product. (SEL & PB)
- ADHESIVE:** A substance capable of holding materials together by surface attachment. (SEL & PB)
- ADHESIVE BOND:** A relationship between two materials in contact with each other causing them to stick or adhere together by means other than cohesion. (SEL & PB)
- ADMIXTURE (1):** Any substance added to a plaster component or to plaster mortar for the purpose of altering its properties. (GA)
- ADMIXTURE (2):** A material other than water, aggregate, or basic cementitious material that is used as an ingredient of plaster and is added to the batch immediately before or during its mixing for the purpose of improving flow and workability or imparting particular qualities to the mortar. (SEL & PB)
- AFTERGLOW:** Glow in a material after the removal of an external source of fire exposure or after the cessation (natural or induced) of flaming of the material. (SEL & PB)
- AGGREGATE:** An inert material used as a filler with cementitious material and water to produce plaster, concrete, etc. The term used in conjunction with plaster usually implies sand, vermiculite, or perlite. (GA)
- FINE AGGREGATE:** Sand or other inorganic aggregate for use in plastering. See ASTM C35 for gypsum plastering and ANSI A42.2-1971 for portland cement plastering. (SEL & PB)
- FINES:** Aggregate particles with a high percentage passing the No. 200 sieve. (SEL & PB)
- LAKE SAND:** Sand consisting predominantly of fine rounded particles. (SEL & PB)
- PERLITE:** A siliceous volcanic glass. Properly expanded by heat and weighing not less than $7\frac{1}{2}$ nor more than 15 lbs. per cu. ft.; used as a light-weight aggregate in plaster. (SEL & PB)
- SAND:** Loose granular material resulting from the natural disintegration of rock or from the crushing of friable sandstone. Manufactured sand is the fine material resulting from the crushing and classification by screening, or otherwise, of rock, gravel, or blast furnace slag. (SEL & PB)
- VERMICULITE:** A micaceous mineral properly expanded by heat and weighing not less than 6 nor more than 10 lbs. per cu. ft. Vermiculite is used as a light-weight aggregate in plaster. (SEL & PB)
- AIR CONTENT:** The volume of air (or other gas) voids in freshly mixed cement mortar, usually expressed as a percentage of total volume of the mortar. (SEL & PB)
- AIR-ENTRAINMENT:** The process by which air is introduced into a material while in a liquid or plastic state in the form of small isolated bubbles. (GA)
- ALABASTER:** A massive densely crystalline, softly textured form of practically pure gypsum. (GA)

- ALPHA-GYPSUM:** A term denoting a class of specially processed calcined gypsums having properties of low consistency and high strength. Alpha Gypsums can be produced having strengths in excess of 10,000 P.S.I. (GA)
- ANGLE FLOAT:** A finishing tool having a surface bent to form a right angle. Used to finish re-entrant angles. (GA)
- ANHYDROUS CALCIUM SULPHATE:** A stable form of gypsum from which practically all of the water of crystallization has been removed. Described by the term dead-burned gypsum. (GA)
- ARCH CORNER BEAD:** A job-shaped length of corner bead used to define the curved portion of arched openings. (GA)
- ARRIS:** A sharp edge, forming an external corner at the junction of two surfaces. (SEL & PB)
- ATOMIZER:** Device by which air is introduced into material at the nozzle to regulate the texture of machine-applied plaster. (SEL & PB)
- AVERAGE COEFFICIENT OF CUBICAL EXPANSION:** Average change in unit volume of a substance per unit change in temperature over a specified range of temperature. (SEL & PB)
- AVERAGE COEFFICIENT OF LINER EXPANSION:** Average change of unit length of a body per unit change in temperature over a specified range of temperature. (SEL & PB)
- BOND STRENGTH:** The unit load applied in tension, compression, flexure, peel, impact, cleavage, or shear, required to break an adhesive assembly with failure occurring in or near the plane of the bond. (SEL & PB)
- BULKING:** The increase in volume of a material due to manipulation. (SEL & PB)
- BACKING:** See PLASTER BASE.
- BACK-PLASTERING:** A term denoting plaster applied to one face of a lath system following application and subsequent hardening of a plaster applied to the opposite face. Back-Plastering is used primarily in construction of solid plaster partitions and certain exterior wall systems. (GA)
- BASE:** See PLASTER BASE. (GA)
- BASE BEAD:** See BASE SCREED. (GA)
- BASECOAT¹:** Any plaster coat or coats applied prior to application of the finish coat. (GA)
- BASECOAT²:** The sum total of all plaster coat or coats applied prior to application of the finish coat. Where more than one layer of plaster is applied the first application is called the scratch coat and the second application is called the brown coat. (SEL & PB)
- BASE SCREED:** A preformed metal screen with perforated or expanded flanges. Provides a ground for plaster and separates areas of dissimilar materials. (GA)
- BEDDING COAT:** That coat of plaster to receive aggregate or other decorative material of any size, impinged into its surface, before it sets. (SEL & PB)
- BEAD:** A strip of sheet metal usually formed with a projecting nosing and 2 perforated or expanded flanges. The nosing serves to establish plaster grounds while the flanges provide for attachment to the plaster base. Used at the perimeter of a plaster membrane as a stop or at projecting angles to define and reinforce the edge. Types are corner beads, base beads, casing beads, etc. (GA)
- BEVEL:** A slanted surface. (SEL & PB)
- BINDER:** See CEMENTITIOUS MATERIAL. A component of an adhesive composition which is primarily responsible for the adhesive forces which hold two bodies together. (SEL & PB)
- BLISTERING:** A condition usually characterized by a bulging of the finish plaster coat as it separates and draws away from the base-coat. The resulting protuberances are often termed "turtle backs". Caused by application over too damp a basecoat, or troweling too soon or incomplete hydration of finish lime. (SEL & PB)
- BOND:** The state of adherence between plaster coats or between plaster and a plaster base produced by adhesive and/or cohesive properties of plaster or special supplementary materials. (SEL & PB)
- CHEMICAL BOND:** A term used to describe adherence of one plaster coat to another or to the base, which implies formation of inter-locking crystals or fusion between the coats or to the base. (SEL & PB)
- MECHANICAL BOND:** A term used to describe the physical keying of one plaster coat to another or to the plaster base. (SEL & PB)
- BOND STRENGTH:** The unit load applied in tension, compression, flexure, peel, impact, cleavage, or shear, required to break an adhesive assembly with failure occurring in or near the plane of bond. (SEL & PB)
- BONDING AGENT:** A substance applied to a surface to improve the quality of the bond between it and succeeding plaster application. (GA)

BOND PLASTER: A specially formulated gypsum plaster designed as a first coat application over monolithic concrete. (GA)

BREAK: An interruption in the continuity of a plastered surface. (SEL & PB)

BROWN COAT: The coat of plaster directly beneath the finish coat. In two coat work, brown coat refers to the double-up basecoat plaster applied to gypsum lath. In three coat work, the brown coat is the second coat and is applied over the scratch (first) coat. The second coat in three coat plaster application. (GA)

BROWN OUT: To complete application of basecoat plastering. (GA)

BUCKLES: Raised or ruptured spots in the plaster which usually crack and break the bond. (SEL & PB)

BUILDING LIME: A lime whose chemical and physical characteristics and method of processing make it suitable for ordinary or special construction uses; also called construction lime. (GA)

BULK DENSITY: The weight of a material per unit of volume. (GA)

BULL NOSE: An external angle which is rounded in order to eliminate a sharp arris or corner; may be run in plaster or obtained by use of a metal accessory. (SEL & PB)

BUTTERFLIES: Color imperfections in a lime-putty finish coat which smear out under pressure of the trowel. (GA)

CALCINE: To drive off or lose chemically combined water by action of heat thereby altering the chemical and physical characteristics of a material. (GA)

CALCINED GYPSUM: Gypsum that has been partially dehydrated by heat. (GA)

CAPILLARY MIGRATION: The movement of water by capillary action. (SEL & PB)

CASTS: Finished products from a mold sometimes referred to as a staff. (GA)

CASING BEAD: A bead used at the perimeter of a plaster membrane or around openings to provide a stop and, to provide separation from adjacent materials. (GA)

CATFACE: Blemish or rough depression in the finish coat caused by variations in basecoat thickness. A flaw. (GA)

CONTACT CEILING: A ceiling which is secured in direct contact with the construction above without use of furring. (GA)

CEMENT: A material or mixture of materials which when in a plastic state, possesses adhesive and cohesive properties and which will set in place. Note: The word cement is used without regard to the composition of the material. (GA)

CEMENTITIOUS MATERIAL: A component material of plaster which when mixed with water provides plasticity necessary for placement. Upon subsequent setting or hardening it serves to bind aggregate particles together into a rigid heterogeneous mass. (GA)

CEMENT PLASTER: A variously defined term used in some localities to denote a plaster containing portland cement, in other localities to denote calcined gypsum. (GA)

CHECK CRACKS: See CRAZE CRACKS.

CHECKING: See CRAZE CRACKS.

CHEMICAL BOND: A term denoting bond produced by cohesion between separate laminae of similar crystalline materials. Based on formation and subsequent interlocking of crystals. (GA)

CHIP CRACKS: Fine cracks, similar to check cracks except that bond is partially destroyed producing a series of concave fragments of the surface material. The condition is also termed "egg shelling", fire cracking, etc. (GA)

CLIPS: A classification of devices usually made of wire or sheet metal used to attach various types of lath to supports or to secure adjacent lath sheets. (GA)

BEAM CLIP: A formed wire section used to attach lath to flanges of steel beams.

CASING CLIP: A formed metal section which puts pressure on a casing bead to assure rigid positioning.

CLIP FOR CONTROL OF MOVEMENT: A flexible, resilient metal section separating the plaster membrane from supports to reduce plaster cracking due to structural movement (and to reduce sound transmission).

CORNER BEAD CLIP: A metal section used, where necessary, to provide an extension for attachment of various types of corner beads.

END CLIP: A metal section used to secure ends and edges of gypsum lath.

FURRING CLIP: A metal section for attaching cross furring to main runners.

INDIVIDUAL STUD CLIP: A formed metal section for use where a floor runner is impractical.

LATH CLIP (GENERIC): A metal section to secure lath to supports.

MASONRY WALL CLIP: See WALL FURRING BASE CLIP.

- METAL BASE CLIP:** A formed metal section to which is attached metal base for partitions or walls.
- METAL LATH CLIP:** A formed wire section for fastening metal lath to flanges of steel joists.
- SOUND TRANSMISSION CLIP:** A flexible, resilient metal clip used to decrease sound transmission through partition and floor assemblies. (Also serves to lessen plaster cracking resulting from structural movement.)
- STARTER CLIP:** A metal section used at floor or initial course of gypsum lath.
- WALL FURRING BASE CLIP:** A formed metal section used to attach metal base to furred walls.
- COAT:** A thickness, covering, or layer of plaster applied in a single operation. (GA)
- COLORED FINISHED:** Plaster finish coats containing integrally mixed color pigments or colored aggregates. (GA)
- COMBUSTIBLE:** Capable of undergoing combustion in air, at pressures and temperatures that might occur during a fire in a building, unless otherwise specified. (SEL & PB)
- COMBUSTION:** Any chemical process that produces light and heat either as glow or flames. (SEL & PB)
- COMPOUND PLASTER:** A regional term denoting neat calcined gypsum for use in basecoat plasters. (GA)
- COMPRESSIVE STRENGTH:** The maximum load sustained by a standard specimen of a material when subjected to a crushing force. (SEL & PB)
- CONDITION, STANDARD:** The condition reached by a specimen when it is in temperature and moisture equilibrium with a standard atmosphere. (SEL & PB)
- CONDITIONING:** The exposure of a material to the influence of a prescribed atmosphere for a stipulated period of time or until a stipulated relation is reached between material and atmosphere. (SEL & PB)
- CONSISTENCY:** A term literally denoting the fluidity or viscosity of a plaster mortar or cementitious paste. The term is often used to denote the quantity of water required to bring a given quantity of dry cementitious material or mixture of cementitious material and aggregate to a given state of fluidity. (GA)
- CONTACT CEILINGS:** A ceiling which is secured in direct contact with the construction above without the use of furring. (GA)
- CORNER BEAD:** A metal bead used at projecting or external angles to define and reinforce the corner. (GA)
- CORNER REINFORCEMENT:** Plaster reinforcement used at reentrant or internal angles to provide continuity between two intersecting plaster planes. Usually a strip of diamond mesh metal lath bent to form a right angle. Other names "cornerite", corner lath. (GA)
- CORROSION RESISTANT:** Term used to describe a material or treatment designed to inhibit corrosion. (SEL & PB)
- CRACK:** Line of fracture without complete separation. (SEL & PB)
- CRAZE CRACKS:** Fine, random fissures or cracks which may appear in a plaster surface caused by plaster shrinkage. Also termed check cracking, these cracks are generally associated with a lime finish coat that has not been properly gauged or troweled. (GA)
- CROSS FURRING:** Term used to denote furring members attached to other structural components to support lath in suspended ceilings. Generally 3/4" steel channels or pencil rods. Attached at right angles to the underside of main runners or other structural supports. (SEL & PB)
- CURE:** To provide conditions conducive to completion of the hydration process. Generally used in conjunction with portland cement plaster: To maintain a sufficient quantity of water in contact with portland cement plaster to insure complete hydration throughout the period required for this process to take place. (GA)
- CURE, NORMAL CURE:** The method of setting or hardening wherein portland cement is allowed to hydrate at atmospheric conditions of pressure preferably under conditions to inhibit water loss. (SEL & PB)
- DAMPROOFING:** Treatment of a surface or structure which retards the passage of liquid water. (SEL & PB)
- DARBY:** A flat wooden or metal tool about 4" wide and 42" long with handles; used to smooth or float the brown coat; also used on finished coat to give a preliminary true and even surface. (GA)
- DASH-BOND COAT:** A thick slurry of portland cement, sand, and water dashed on smooth monolithic concrete surfaces with a paddle or whisk-broom to provide a key for subsequent portland cement plaster coats. (GA)
- DEAD BURNED:** Removal of all water content during calcining of gypsum. (SEL & PB)

- DECIBEL:** A unit measure of sound intensity which can be used in expressing sound volume or loudness. (GA)
- DELAMINATION:** Separation at the interface of a composite material. Also used to describe a laminar separation in a homogeneous material due to a fault. (SEL & PB)
- DENSITY:** The weight per unit volume of a material. (SEL & PB)
- DEVIL'S FLOAT:** A wooden float with two nails protruding from the toe. Usually used to roughen the surface of the brown coat. (GA)
- DEW POINT:** The temperature at which a vapor (air) is saturated with water vapor at the existing pressure. (SEL & PB)
- DIAMOND MESH:** One of the common types of metal lath having a characteristic geometrical pattern produced by the slitting and expansion of metal sheets. (GA)
- DIATOMACEOUS EARTH:** Fossil remains of small aquatic plants and essentially silica. Extremely porous and thus low in density. (SEL & PB)
- DOLOMITIC:** Term used to denote a type of lime or limestone containing calcium carbonate in combination with up to 50% magnesium carbonate. (GA)
- DOPE:** A term used by plasterers for mortar additives of any type, such as those used to retard or accelerate set. (GA)
- DOT:** A small lump of plaster placed on a surface between grounds to assist the plasterer in obtaining the proper plaster thickness and aid in aligning the surface. (GA)
- DOUBLE-UP:** A method of plaster placement characterized by application in successive operations with no setting or drying time allowed between coats. Also called double-back, doubled-up, laid off, laid-on or two coat work. (GA)
- DRY-OUT:** A condition occasionally occurring in gypsum plaster work which by excessive evaporation or suction has lost some or all of the water necessary for crystallization. Appears as a light colored, friable area. (GA)
- DURABILITY:** The safe performance of a structure or portion of a structure for the designed life expectancy. (SEL & PB)
- EFFLORESCENCE:** White, fleecy surface deposits sometimes found on plaster or masonry. Also referred to as "whiskering" or "saltpetering". (GA)
- EGGSHELLING:** See CHIP CRACKS.
- ELECTROMOTIVE SERIES:** A table that lists in order the standard electrode potentials of specified electrochemical reactions. (Galvanic Series) (SEL & PB)
- EXPANDED METAL:** Term used to denote sheet metal which has been slit and drawn out to form diamond-shaped or herringbone openings. This, when used as a plaster base, is termed "metal lath". (GA)
- EXPANSION JOINT:** A device usually formed from sheet metal and having a "W" shaped cross section. Used to provide controlled discontinuity at locations in a plaster membrane where high stresses may be encountered. Also known as a "relief joint" or a "control joint". (GA)
- FAT:** Material accumulated on the trowel during the finishing operation often used to fill in small imperfections. Also a term used to describe working characteristics of a mortar containing a high proportion of cementitious material. Also used to describe working characteristics of highly plastic mortars. (GA)
- FALSE SET:** The rapid development of rigidity in a mixed portland cement mortar without the evolution of much heat, which rigidity can be dispelled and plasticity regained by further mixing without addition of water. (SEL & PB)
- FEATHER EDGE:** A tool of metal or wood having a beveled edge. Used in finish coat work to straighten reentrant angles. (GA)
- FIBER:** Animal hair or sisal, manilla or glass fibers of appropriate length added to plaster mortar to increase its cohesiveness. (GA)
- FIBERED:** Term pertaining to basecoat plaster containing animal, vegetable, or glass fiber. Note: Not included in this definition is neat gypsum basecoat plaster containing wood fiber as an aggregate and designed for use either with or without addition of other aggregates which is termed "wood-fibered plaster". (GA)
- FINES:** Term usually pertaining to small aggregate particles capable of passing through a #200 sieve. (GA)
- FINISHING BRUSHES:** Brushes used to apply water to a smooth lime finish coat during final troweling. (GA)
- FINENESS MODULUS:** An abstract number used to compare different particles or graduations of aggregate. The fineness modulus is computed by adding the cumulative percentages retained on the six standard screens (#4, #8, #16, #30, #50, and #100) and dividing the sum by 100. (GA)

- FINISH COAT¹:** The last layer of plaster applied. Usually providing a decorative surface or a base for further decoration. (GA)
- FINISH COAT²:** The final layer of plaster applied over a basecoat or other substrate. Usually providing a decorative surface or a base for further decoration. It may be surfaced as follows: (SEL & PB)
- TROWELLED FINISH:** Produced by water trowelling with a steel trowel to produce a smooth and dense surface.
- FLOAT FINISHES:** Obtained by floating with a shingle, wood, carpet, cork, rubber, etc. to bring the aggregate to the surface. The finish may vary from smooth to coarse, depending on the aggregate and the tool.
- TEXTURED FINISHES:** Obtained by special methods such as: stippling, strippling, dashing, trowelling, floating, etc. or a combination of these.
- COLORED FINISHES:** Plaster finish coats containing integrally mixed color pigments or colored aggregates.
- MARBLECRETE:** Surface-bedded materials such as marble chips, glass, crushed ceramic tile, etc. thrown forcibly onto a bedding coat by hand or machine and then tamped lightly to give uniform embedment.
- DASH COAT:** Of fine or coarse texture applied either by hand or by machine. See STUCCO FINISHES.
- GLITTER FINISHES:** Mica or metallic flakes blown on to the wet exterior or interior finish coats.
- FIREPROOFING:**
- CONTACT:** Application of fire-resistive material direct to structural members to protect them from fire damage.
- MEMBRANE:** A lath and plaster system which is separated from the structural steel members in most cases by furring or suspension, to provide fireproofing. (SEL & PB)
- FIRE ENDURANCE:** A measure of the elapsed time during which a material or assembly continues to exhibit fire resistance under specified conditions of test and performance. As applied to elements of buildings, it shall be measured by the methods and to the criteria defined in the Methods of Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials. (ASTM Designation E119.) (SEL & PB)
- FIRE EXPOSURE:** The subjection of a material or construction to a high heat flux from an external source, with or without flame impingement. (External sources as used here may include building contents or building components.) (SEL & PB)
- FIRE RESISTANCE:** The property of a material or assembly to withstand fire or give protection from it. As applied to elements of buildings, it is characterized by the ability to confine a fire or to continue to perform a given structural function, or both. (SEL & PB)
- FIRE RESISTIVE:** Having fire resistance. (SEL & PB)
- FIRE RETARDANT:** Having or providing comparatively low flammability or flame spread properties. (SEL & PB)
- FIRE RETARDANT RATING:** A standard rating of fire-resistive and protective characteristics of a building material or assembly. (SEL & PB)
- FLAME SPREAD CLASSIFICATION:** A standard rating of relative surface burning characteristics of a building material as compared to a standard material. (SEL & PB)
- FIRE TEST EXPOSURE SEVERITY:** A measure of the degree of fire exposure; specifically in connection with ASTM methods E119, E152, and E163, the ratio of the area under the curve of average furnace temperature to the area under the standard time-temperature curve, each from the start of the test to the end or time of failure, and above the base temperature 68F (20C). (SEL & PB)
- FLAME SPREAD:** Flaming combustion along a surface; not to be confused with flame transfer by air currents. (SEL & PB)
- FLAMMABLE:** Subject to easy ignition and rapid flaming combustion. (SEL & PB)
- FISH EYES:** A term used to describe small blemishes occasionally found in lime finish coats. Approximately ¼" in diameter, they are caused by lumpy lime. (GA)
- FLEXURAL STRENGTH:** The maximum load sustained by a standard specimen of a sheet material when subjected to a bending force. (SEL & PB)
- FLOAT:** A tool or procedure used by the plasterer to straighten and level the finish coat surface, to correct surface irregularities produced by other tools and to impart a distinctive surface texture. (GA)
- FLOAT FINISH:** A finish coat texture which is rougher than a trowel finish. The roughness is derived primarily from aggregate particles contained in the plaster mortar. (GA)

FLOATING:

- BASE COAT FLOATING:** The act of spreading, compacting, and smoothing plaster to a reasonably true plane on exterior and interior surfaces. (SEL & PB)
- FINISH COAT FLOATING:** The act of bringing the aggregate to surface to produce a uniform texture. (SEL & PB)
- FREE WATER:** All water contained by gypsum board or plaster in excess of that chemically held as water of crystallization. (SEL & PB)
- FRESCO:** An artistic or decorative medium consisting of a water-soluble paint applied to freshly applied plaster. (SEL & PB)
- FURRED CEILING:** A ceiling having spacer elements, (usually furring channels, round rods, or wood strips) interposed between it and the supporting structure above. (SEL & PB)
- FURRING:** Wall or ceiling construction beyond or below the normal surface plane; designates also the members used in such construction. Term also applied to spacer elements used to maintain a space between a finish and the structural elements behind it. (SEL & PB)
- FURRING CHANNELS:** Term generally applied to 3/4" cold or hot rolled steel channels used in plaster base construction. (SEL & PB)
- GALVANIZING:** Application of a coating of zinc. (SEL & PB)
- GAUGING:** Another cementitious material, (usually calcined gypsum, Keene's cement, or portland cement) added to lime putty to provide and control set. Also the act of adding gauging material. (SEL & PB)
- GAUGING PLASTER:** Specially ground gypsum plaster that mixes easily with lime putty and Type "S" Hydrated Lime; available in fast or slow setting formulations. (SEL & PB)
- GEL:** A semi-solid system consisting of a network of solid aggregates in which liquid is held. (SEL & PB)
- GESSO:** A plaster surface composed of gypsum plaster, whiting, and glue; used as a base for decorative painting. (GA)
- GLAZING:** A condition created by the fines of a machine dash texture plaster traveling to the surface and producing a flattened texture and shine or discoloration. (SEL & PB)
- GRADUATION:** The particle size distribution of aggregate as determined by separation with standard screens. Sieve analysis, screen analysis, and mechanical analysis are terms used synonymously in referring to graduation of aggregate. Graduation of aggregate is expressed in terms of the individual percentages retained on U.S. Standard screens designated by the numbers 4-8-16-30-50 and 100. (GA)
- GREEN:** A term used to describe newly applied plaster that has not dried. (SEL & PB)
- GRILLAGE:** A framework composed of main runner channels and furring channels to support ceiling and ceiling lath. (SEL & PB)
- GROUNDS:** A piece of wood or metal attached to the plaster base so that its exposed surface acts as a gauge to determine the thickness of plaster to be applied. Also used by the carpenter as a nailing base or spacer for attachment of trim. A term denoting plaster thickness. (GA)
- GYPSITE:** An earthy deposit found at or near the surface of the ground, consisting of finely crystalline gypsum mixed with loam, clay, sand, and humus. Gypsum content generally ranges from 60% to more than 90%. (SEL & PB)
- GYPSUM:** A naturally occurring mineral consisting of calcium sulphate combined with two molecules of water, in crystalline form, having the approximate chemical formula $\text{CaSO}_4 \cdot 2\text{H}_2\text{O}$. (ASTM C11) The mineral consisting primarily of fully hydrated calcium sulfate $\text{CaSO}_4 \cdot 2\text{H}_2\text{O}$ or calcium sulfate dihydrate. (SEL & PB)
- GYPSUM BASE FOR VENEER PLASTERS:** Consists of an essentially gypsum, noncombustible core but not exceeding 15% of fiber by weight, surfaced with paper to receive veneer plasters. Manufactured in 1/2" or 5/8" thicknesses and 48" widths and 6" to 16" lengths. (SEL & PB)
- GYPSUM BOND PLASTER:** A mill plaster specially formulated with a small percentage of lime for direct application to roughened monolithic concrete surfaces. (SEL & PB)
- GYPSUM CONCRETE:** A combination of aggregate or aggregates with calcite gypsum as a binding medium which after mixing with water sets in a conglomerate mass. (SEL & PB)
- GYPSUM LATH:** A plaster base manufactured in the form of sheets or slabs of various sizes and either 3/8" or 1/2" thick, having an incombustible core (essentially gypsum) and surfaced with special paper suitable for receiving gypsum plaster. (GA)

- GYPSUM LATH (PLAIN):** A plaster base manufactured in sheets or slabs of various sizes and either 3/8", 1/2", or 5/8" thick, having an incombustible core, essentially gypsum, surface with special paper suitable to receive gypsum plaster. One face may be variously treated, such as mechanical pricking or indenting, or impregnation with a catalyst. (SEL & PB)
- INSULATING:** Same as plain lath except that the back surface is covered with a continuous sheet of pure bright-finished aluminum.
- LEAD-BACK LATH:** Plain gypsum lath to which sheets of lead have been laminated.
- PERFORATED:** Plain lath that has perforations not less than 3/4" in diameter, with one perforation for not more than each 16 sq. inch.
- TYPE "X":** Plain lath, except that the core has increased fire retardant properties to improve its fire-resistive rating.
- GYPSUM GAUGING PLASTER:** A plaster mixed with lime putty to control the setting time and initial strength of the finish coat. Classified either as quick-set or slow-set. (SEL & PB)
- GYPSUM MOLDING PLASTER:** A specially formulated plaster used in casting and ornamental plasterwork; may be used neat or with lime. (SEL & PB)
- GYPSUM NEAT PLASTER:** A plaster requiring the addition of aggregate on the job. It may be unfibered or fibered (animal, vegetable, or glass fibers). Common usage is for base coats. (SEL & PB)
- GYPSUM NEAT PLASTER "TYPE R":** Rapid plaster is calcined gypsum mixed at the mill with other ingredients to control working and setting time. This plaster is for use with sand aggregate only and is designed for application over gypsum lath to a maximum thickness of 1/2 inch. (SEL & PB)
- GYPSUM PLASTER¹:** The generic name for a family of powdered cementitious products consisting primarily of calcined gypsum with additives to modify physical characteristics, and having the ability, when mixed with water, to produce a plastic mortar or slurry which can be formed to the desired shape by various methods and will subsequently set to a hard, rigid mass. (SEL & PB)
- GYPSUM PLASTER²:** Ground calcined gypsum combined with various additives to control set. Also used to denote applied gypsum plaster mixtures. (GA)
- GYPSUM READY-MIXED PLASTER:** A term denoting a plaster which is mixed at the mill with a mineral aggregate. It may contain other ingredients to control time of set and working properties. Similar terms are mill mixed and premixed. Only the addition and mixture of water is required on the job. (SEL & PB)
- GYPSUM TROWEL FINISH:** Various proprietary ready-mixed finish coat materials consisting essentially of calcined gypsum. (GA)
- GYPSUM WOOD FIBER PLASTER:** A mill-mixed plaster containing a small percentage of wood fiber as an aggregate used for fireproofing and increased strength. (SEL & PB)
- HARDENING:** The gain of strength of a plastered surface after setting. (See SET) (SEL & PB)
- HARDNESS:** The resistance of a material to deformation, particularly permanent deformation, indentation, or scratching. (SEL & PB)
- HANGERS:** Tensile members used to attach the framework of a suspended ceiling to the supporting structure above. (GA)
- HARDWALL:** A regional term denoting neat gypsum basecoat plaster. (GA)
- HAWK:** A tool used by plasterers to hold and carry plaster mortar. The hawk consists of a flat piece of wood or metal approximately 10" by 14" square, with a wooden handle centered and fixed to the underside. (GA)
- HEMIHYDRATE¹:** A hydrate containing half a molecule of water to one of the material forming the hydrate. A term used to describe the form of calcined gypsum generally used for plaster. (GA)
- HEMIHYDRATE²:** The dry powder, calcium sulfate hemihydrate, resulting from calcination of $\text{CaSO}_4 \cdot 2\text{H}_2\text{O}$, calcium sulfate dihydrate. A hydrate containing half a molecule of water to one of the materials forming the hydrate. (SEL & PB)
- HIGH STRENGTH-THIN COAT PLASTER:** A high density, low consistency plaster applied in one or two coats directly to the lath and to a thickness of 1/16 inch to 1/8 inch. (See RAPID PLASTER and VENEER PLASTER). (GA)
- HODDABILITY:** A term descriptive of the ease with which a plaster mortar may be handled with a hod or hawk. Dependant upon flow characteristics and angle of repose of the mortar. (GA)
- HOG RING:** A heavy galvanized wire staple applied with a pneumatic gun which clinches it in the form of a closed ring around stud, rod, pencil rod, channel to attach lath. (SEL&PB)

- HOMOGENEOUS MASS:** A mass that exhibits essentially the same physical characteristics at every point throughout the mass. (SEL & PB)
- HYDRATE:** To combine with water or elements of water. A term used to denote hydrated lime. (GA)
- IGNITION:** The initiation of combustion, as evidenced by glow, flame, or explosion. (SEL & PB)
- IMPACT RESISTANCE:** Resistance to fracture under shock force. (SEL & PB)
- INDENTATION HARDNESS:** Resistance to penetration by an indentor. (SEL & PB)
- INTERIOR STUCCO:** A regional term designating a finish plaster for walls and ceilings finishing smooth or textured. It is a mechanically blended compound of Keene's cement, lime (type "S") and inert fine aggregate. Color pigment may be added to produce integrally colored interior stucco. (See STUCCO) (SEL & PB)
- JOINING¹:** Sometimes termed a jointing, denotes the juncture of two separate plaster applications usually within a single surface plane. (GA)
- JOINING²:** The juncture of two separate plaster applications of the same coat, usually within a single surface plane. (SEL & PB)
- JOINT REINFORCING EMBEDMENT:** Veneer plaster or other cementitious material used to embed the strip material that is compatible with the veneer plaster used. (SEL & PB)
- JOINT REINFORCING METAL:** Strips of expanded metal, woven or welded wire mesh used to reinforce corners and other areas of plaster and lath. (SEL & PB)
- JOINT REINFORCING STRIP:** A type of paper, metal, fabric, glass mesh, or other material commonly used with a cementitious compound to reinforce the joints between adjacent gypsum boards. (SEL & PB)
- JOURNEYMAN:** A term applicable to a plasterer or lather who through training and experience has become thoroughly skilled in his trade. Distinguished from an apprentice or a laborer. (GA)
- KEENE'S CEMENT¹:** A cementitious material used principally in finish coats as gauging for lime putty. Capable of producing a very hard, smooth surface. Keene's Cement consists of gypsum, calcines to a point where all but 0.1% to 1% of the water of crystallization has been removed, and compounded with an accelerator. Also termed anhydrous calcined gypsum. (GA)
- KEENE'S CEMENT²:** An anhydrous gypsum plaster characterized by a low mixing water requirement and special setting properties, primarily used as gauging with lime putty to produce hard, dense finish coats. (SEL & PB)
- KEY:** The grip or mechanical bond of one coat of plaster to another coat or to a plaster base. It may be accomplished physically by the penetration of wet mortar or crystals into paper fibers, perforations, scoring irregularities, or by the embedment of the lath. (SEL & PB)
- KRAFT:** A term meaning strength, applied to pulp, paper, or paperboard produced from virgin fibers by the sulfate process. (SEL & PB)
- LAKE SAND:** Sand consisting predominantly of fine, rounded particles. (GA) (SEL & PB)
- LAND PLASTER:** A term used to describe coarsely ground natural gypsum used agriculturally as a soil conditioner. (GA) (SEL & PB)
- LATH¹:** A material applied separately to a structure whose primary function is that of a plaster base. Lath is generally classified as metallic, gypsum, wood, or insulation board. (GA)
- LATH²:** A material applied separately to a structure whose primary function is to provide a plaster base. See GYPSUM LATH, EXPANDED METAL LATH, EXPANDED STUCCO MESH, SHEET LATH, WELDED WIRE LATH, WOVEN WIRE FABRIC, FOAM PLASTER BASE. (SEL & PB)
- LATH AND PLASTER MEMBRANE:** A thin slab of lath and plaster including any integral supporting and stiffening members. A term describing lath and plaster as a unit of structure. (GA)
- LEAN MIXTURE:** A term denoting any plaster mortar containing a relatively high ratio of aggregate to cementitious material. The term "harsh" is often mortar mix that is too lean. (GA)
- LIGHTWEIGHT AGGREGATES:** A term generally applied to vermiculite and perlite distinguished from sand and middle weight aggregates such as pumice, expanded slag, etc. (GA)
- LIME¹:** A general term applicable to the principal product derived from burning various types of limestone. Consisting essentially of the oxides or hydroxides of calcium and magnesium. (GA)
- LIME² (CALCIUM OXIDE, CaO) :** A general term usually referring to quicklime, formed by burning (calcining) limestone at temperatures sufficient to drive off the natural carbon dioxide content. (SEL & PB)
- AUTOCLAVED LIME:** Thoroughly hydrated lime, manufactured by hydrating (slaking) in a pressure chamber rather than at normal atmospheric pressure.
- HYDRATED LIME:** (Calcium Hydroxide, Ca(OH)₂) A dry powder obtained by treating quicklime with water enough to satisfy its chemical affinity for water under the conditions of its hydration. The dry relatively stable material produced by

treating quicklime with just enough water to satisfy its chemical affinity for water under the conditions of its hydration. (GA) (SEL & PB)

TYPE "S" HYDRATED LIME: A special finishing hydrated lime, distinguished from Type "N" (normal finishing hydrated lime) by restrictions on the amount of unhydrated oxides. Plasticity requirements of Type "S" hydrated lime may be determined after a shorter soaking period than with Type "N". (SEL & PB)

TYPE "N" HYDRATED LIME: See TYPE "S" above.

HIGH CALCIUM LIME: Quicklime in which the principal chemical constituent, calcium oxide (CaO), is normally in excess of 95%. A type of lime containing principally calcium oxide or hydroxide and not more than 5% magnesium oxide or hydroxide. (GA) (SEL & PB)

HIGH MAGNESIUM LIME: Quicklime in which the magnesium oxide (MgO) content is normally approximately 35 % with a corresponding reduction in the calcium oxide (CaO) content. Combined oxides normally are 98% plus in high-quality lime. (SEL & PB)

LIME PUTTY: The product resulting from quicklime or hydrated lime to which an excess of water has been added to form a plastic putty of "hodable" consistency. A plastering material resulting from slaking quicklime or soaking and mixing hydrated lime with a sufficient quantity of water to form a thick paste. (GA) (SEL & PB)

LUMP LIME: Quicklime as it comes from the kiln. Quicklime in large chunks as produced in vertical kilns. Lime in this form is rarely used in modern plastering techniques. (GA) (SEL & PB)

PROCESSED QUICKLIME: Quicklime which has been pulverized to a very fine powder from. (SEL & PB)

QUICKLIME: A calcined material, the major part of which is calcium oxide or calcium oxide in natural association with a lesser amount of magnesium oxide capable of slaking with water. (SEL & PB)

LIME PLASTER: An interior basecoat plaster containing lime, aggregate, and sometimes fiber. Lime basecoat plaster is slow-setting. Follow regional or area practice. It should not be applied to gypsum lath. A term generally referring to basecoat plaster consisting essentially of lime and an aggregate. See PORTLAND CEMENT-LIME PLASTER. (GA) (SEL & PB)

LINE WIRE: Soft annealed steel wire placed horizontally around a building of open frame construction to support water-proffing paper or felt. (GA)

LOW-CONSISTENCY PLASTER¹: A neat gypsum basecoat plaster that has been specially processed during manufacture so that less mixing water is required to produce workability than in standard gypsum basecoat plaster. (GA)

LOW-CONSISTENCY PLASTER²: A neat (unfibred) gypsum basecoat plaster especially processed so that less mixing water is required than in standard gypsum basecoat plaster to produce workability. This type plaster is particularly adapted to machine application. (SEL & PB)

MACHINE DIRECTION: The lengthwise direction in which the paper is formed and travels on the paper machine. (SEL & PB)

MAIN RUNNERS: The heaviest integral supporting members in a suspended ceiling. Main runners are supported by hangers attached to the building structure and in turn support furring channels or rods to which lath is fastened. (GA)

MARBLE CHIPS: Graded aggregate of maximum hardness made from crushed marble to be thrown or blown onto a soft plaster bedding coat to produce marble-crete. (SEL & PB)

MAREZZO: An imitation marble produced with Keene's cement to which color pigments have been added. (GA)

MASKING: Method of affixing paper, plastic, or any flexible protective material or coating to protect adjacent work. (SEL & PB)

MASONRY CEMENT: A hydraulic cement for use in plasters, containing one or more of the following materials: portland cement, portland-pozzolan cement, natural cement, slag cement or hydraulic lime; and, in addition, usually containing one or more materials such as hydrated lime, limestone, chalk, calcareous shell, talc, slag, or clay as prepared for this purpose. (SEL & PB)

MECHANICAL APPLICATION: Application of plaster mortar by mechanical means: Generally pumping and spraying. Distinguished from hand application with a trowel. (GA)

MECHANICAL ATTACHMENT: Attachment of lath by mechanical means, generally by power actuated staple guns and anchorage of tracks, hanger inserts, etc., by power actuated guns. (SEL & PB)

MECHANICAL BOND: A term used to describe the physical keying of one plaster coat to another or to the plaster base. Examples of mechanical bond are the clinching of plaster keys to metallic laths, and the interlocking obtained between adjacent plaster coats by scratching or cross raking. Distinguished from "chemical bond" which implies formation of interlocking crystals or fusion. (GA)

MECHANICAL TROWEL: A power machine used to smooth and compact plaster finish coats. Capable of producing an extremely smooth, dense surface. Consisting of revolving metal or rubber blades. Also termed "power trowel". (GA)

MEMBRANE FIREPROOFING: A lath and plaster membrane having among its functions that of providing a barrier to fire and intense heat. (GA)

METAL ARCH: A sheet formed arch for use as base (lath) or corner reinforcement at arched openings in partitions. (SEL & PB)

METAL BASE: A fabricated integral metal section which also serves as a ground for the plaster (attached to framing member or masonry). (SEL & PB)

METAL CORNER BEAD: Fabricated metal with flanges and nosings at juncture of flanges; used to protect or form arrises, or external angles to define and reinforce the corner. (SEL & PB)

METAL LATH: A term denoting a metallic plaster base manufacturer from sheet metal by slotting and subsequent expansion or by punching and forming. Types are diamond mesh, rib lath, and sheet lath. Distinguished from wire lath, or wire fabric lath which is a welded or woven wire mesh. (GA)

METAL LATH-EXPANDED: Manufactured from copper alloy or galvanized steel coils or sheets and is coated with a rust-inhibitive paint after fabrication, or is made from galvanized sheets. See EXPANDED METAL LATH. (SEL & PB)

DIAMOND MESH or FLAT EXPANDED METAL LATH: No rib in sheet.

SELF-FURRING METAL LATH: So formed that portions of it extended from the face of the lath so that it is separated at least $\frac{1}{4}$ " from the background to which it is attached.

FLAT RIB METAL LATH: Combination of expanded metal and ribs of identical thickness. (A depth of $\frac{1}{8}$ ").

$\frac{3}{8}$ " RIB METAL LATH: Combination of expanded metal and ribs of a total depth of approximately $\frac{3}{8}$ ", measured from the top inside of the lath to the top side of the rib.

$\frac{3}{4}$ " RIB METAL LATH: Combination of expanded metal and ribs of a total depth of approximately $\frac{3}{4}$ ", measured from the top inside of the lath to the top side of the rib.

PAPER-BACKED METAL LATH or EXPANDED STUCCO MESH: A factory assembled combination of any of the preceding defined types of metal, or other assembly being used as a plaster or stucco base.

SHEET LATH: A metal lath, slit, or punched or other wire formed from metal sheets.

MILL-MIXED: Term referring to plaster materials that have been formulated and dry-mixed by the manufacturer, requiring only the addition and mixture of water at the job. (GA)

MORTAR¹: A material used in a plastic state, which can be trowelled and becomes hard in place. The term is used without regard to the composition of the material or its specific use. (GA)

MORTAR²: A mixture of gypsum or portland cement plaster with aggregate or hydrated lime, or both, and water to produce a trowelable fluidity. (The term is used without regard to the composition of the material or its specific use.) (SEL & PB)

MITRE: The diagonal joining of two or more moldings at their intersections. (SEL & PB)

MOISTURE CONTENT: The water content of a substance as measured under specific conditions. (SEL & PB)

MOISTURE EQUILIBRIUM: The condition reached by a sample when the net difference between the amount of moisture absorbed and the amount desorbed, as shown by a change in weight, shows no trend and becomes insignificant. (SEL & PB)

NATURAL CEMENT: Essentially the product obtained by finely pulverizing calcined argillaceous limestone. The temperature of calcination should be no higher than is necessary to drive off carbonic acid gas. (SEL & PB)

NEAT: Term denotes plaster materials requiring the addition of aggregates. (SEL & PB)

NONCOMBUSTIBILITY: The property of a material to withstand high temperature without ignition. As applied to elementary materials of which building materials are composed, it shall be as measured by the methods and to the criteria defined in the Method of Test for Determining Noncombustibility of Elementary Materials. (SEL & PB)

ONE COMPONENT SYSTEM: Veneer plaster systems designed for application directly over approved bases in a single coat or double back operation with the same material. (SEL & PB)

ORIFICE: Attachment to the nozzle on the hose of plastering machines of various shapes and sizes, which may be changed to help establish the pattern of the plaster as it is being projected onto the surface being plastered. (SEL & PB)

- PARGB:** To coat with plaster: Particularly foundation walls and rough masonry. (GA)
- PARGETING:** A term originally applicable to all plaster work. Now generally applied only to elaborate ornamental work. (GA)
- PERLITE:** A siliceous volcanic glass. When expanded by heat it is used as a lightweight plaster aggregate. (GA)
- PERM:** A unit of measurement of water vapor permeance; a metric perm, or $1 \text{ g}/24 \text{ h} \cdot \text{m}^2 \cdot \text{mm Hg}$. U.S. unit, $1 \text{ grain}/\text{h} \cdot \text{ft}^2 \cdot \text{Hg}$. (SEL & PB)
- PERMEABILITY:** The property of a porous material that permits a fluid (or gas) to pass through it; in construction, commonly refers to water vapor permeability of a sheet material. (SEL & PB)
- PLASTER:** From Greek, emplastron, to daub on; Latin, emplastrum, French, platre, old English, plaister. 1. A cementitious material or combination of cementitious materials and aggregate that, when mixed with a suitable amount of water, forms a plastic mass or paste which applied to a surface, adheres to it and subsequently sets or hardens, preserving in a rigid state the form or texture imposed during the period of plasticity. The term "plaster" is used with regard to the specific composition of the material and does not explicitly denote either interior or exterior use. The term "stucco", however, is generally used to describe plaster applied on the exterior. 2. The term "plaster" is used regionally to denote specifically neat calcined gypsum, lime-sand mixtures, etc. 3. To plaster(v). The act of applying plaster. (GA) (SEL & PB)
- PLASTER WORK:** The finished product of the plasterer. (SEL & PB)
- PLASTER OF PARIS:** Calcined Gypsum (calcium sulphate hemihydrate) without addition of material to control set. Principal use is in casting and industrial applications. (SEL & PB)
- PLASTIC CEMENT:** Portland cement to which small amounts of plasticizing agents, not more than 12% by weight, have been added at the mill. (SEL & PB)
- PLASTERING MACHINE:** A mechanical device by which plaster mortar is conveyed through a flexible hose to deposit plaster in place; also known as a plaster pump or plastering gun. (SEL & PB)
- PLASTICITY¹:** That property of plaster mortar that permits continuous and permanent deformation in any direction. A plastic material is distinct from a fluid material in that it requires a measurable force (yield value) to start flow. The property exists in varying degrees in different materials and in plaster mortar is sometimes regarded as an index of working characteristics. (GA) (SEL & PB)
- PLASTICITY²:** A complex property of a material involving a combination of the properties of mobility and of yield value. Note: a plastic material is distinct from a solid material in that it possesses mobility. It is different from a fluid material in that it requires a measurable force (yield value) to start flow. (SEL & PB)
- PLASTICITY³:** A property of adhesives which allows the material to be deformed continuously and permanently without rupture upon the application of a force that exceeds the yield value of the material. (SEL & PB)
- POPS OR PITS:** Ruptures in finished plaster or cement surfaces which may be caused by expansion of improperly slaked particles of lime or by foreign substances. (SEL & PB)
- PUDDLING:** A condition of mechanical dash textures resulting in glazing, texture deviation, or discoloration caused by holding the plastering machine nozzle too long in one area. (SEL & PB)
- PUTTY COAT:** A term generally denoting a smooth-trowelled finish coat containing lime putty and a gauging material. (SEL & PB)
- PLASTERCIZER:** A substance incorporated into a material to increase its workability, flexibility, or distensibility. (SEL & PB)
- POLYMER:** A compound formed by the reaction of simple molecules having functional groups which permit their combination to proceed to high molecular weights under suitable conditions. Polymers may be formed by polymerization (addition polymer) or polycondensation (condensation polymer). When two or more monomers are involved, the product is called a copolymer. (SEL & PB)
- PORTLAND CEMENT:** The product obtained by pulverizing clinker consisting essentially of hydraulic calcium silicates. (SEL & PB)
- PORTLAND CEMENT PLASTER:** A plaster mix in which portland cement is used as the cementitious material. It is usually designated for exterior surfaces or interior areas where moist conditions exist or which may be hosed down at regular and frequent intervals. (SEL & PB)

- PORTLAND CEMENT-LIME PLASTER:** Portland cement and lime (either Type "S" hydrated lime or properly aged lime putty) combined in proportions as specified in standard specifications or applicable building code. (SEL & PB)
- PORTLAND BLAST-FURNACE SLAG CEMENT:** Essentially an intimately interground mixture of portland cement clinker and granulated blast-furnace slag or an intimate and uniform blend of portland cement and fine granulated blasting-furnace slag in which the amount of the slag constituent falls within specified limits. (SEL & PB)
- PORTLAND CEMENT:** A binder material commonly used in plaster. Portland cement alone or in combination with lime is the cementitious material commonly used for exposed exterior plaster work. (GA)
- PORTLAND-POZZOLAN CEMENT:** Essentially an intimately interground mixture of portland cement clinker and pozzolan or an intimate blend of portland cement and fine pozzolan in which the amount of the pozzolan constituent falls within specified limits. (SEL & PB)
- POZZOLAN:** A siliceous or siliceous and aluminous material which in itself possesses little or no cementitious value but will, in finely divided form and in the presence of moisture, chemically react with calcium hydroxide at ordinary temperatures to form compounds possessing cementitious properties. (SEL & PB)
- PULP:** A term used in some areas to denote wood fiber added as an aggregate to neat calcined gypsum. (SEL & PB)
- PUMICE:** A lightweight volcanic rock which, when crushed and graded, may be used as a plaster aggregate. (SEL & PB)
- PURITY:** The percentage of $\text{CaSO}_4 \cdot 1/2 \text{H}_2\text{O}$ in the calcined gypsum portion of a gypsum plaster or gypsum concrete, as defined by Specifications C28, for Gypsum Plasters. The percentage of $\text{CaSO}_4 \cdot \text{H}_2\text{O}$ in the gypsum or the gypsum portion of a fully hydrated, dry set gypsum plaster. (SEL & PB)
- PUTTY-COAT:** A term generally denoting a smooth-troweled finish coat containing lime putty and a gauging material. (GA)
- QUICKLIME:** An unstable material generally produced by burning limestone, the major part of which is calcium oxide or calcium oxide in natural association with a lesser amount of magnesium oxide. Before it can be used in construction, quicklime must be slaked in water and aged for at least 2 weeks. (GA)
- READY-MIXED:** A term denoting a plaster which is mixed at the mill with mineral aggregate and other ingredients which control time of set. Generally used in conjunction with gypsum plasters. Also termed mill-mixed, pre-mixed. (GA)
- REINFORCED JOINT:** A joint between veneer base boards which is reinforced with strip material embedded in veneer plaster or other compatible cementitious material. (SEL & PB)
- RELATIVE HUMIDITY:** The ratio of actual water vapor pressure to the saturation water vapor pressure at the same temperature, expressed as a percentage. (SEL & PB)
- RESIN:** A solid, semisolid, or pseudosolid organic material which has an indefinite and often high molecular weight, exhibits a tendency to flow when subjected to stress, usually has a softening or melting range, and usually fractures conchoidally. (SEL & PB)
- RETARDER¹:** A material that will slow down or lengthen the hardening rate (setting time) of gypsum plaster. (SEL & PB)
- RETARDER²:** An admixture used to delay the setting action of plaster. Generally used only with gypsum plasters or finish coat plaster containing calcined gypsum gauging. (GA)
- RETEMPER:** Addition of water to portland cement plaster after mixing but before setting process has started. Gypsum plaster must not be retempered. (SEL & PB)
- ROCK GUN:** A device for throwing aggregate onto a soft bedding coat in applying Marblecrete or other exposed aggregate. (SEL & PB)
- RUST-RESISTANT:** Used to describe a material or treatment designed to inhibit rusting; not synonymous with rustproof. (SEL & PB)
- SADDLE TIE:** A specific method of wrapping hanger wire around main runners; also of wrapping tie wire around the juncture of main runner and cross furring. (SEL & PB)
- SAND:** Loose granular material resulting from the natural disintegration of rock or from the crushing of friable sandstone. Manufactured sand is the fine material resulting from the crushing and classification by screening or otherwise, of rock, gravel, or blast furnace slag. (GA)
- SCAGLIOLA:** An imitation marble made by the plasterer. Composed of a combination of Keene's cement, glue, isinglass, and coloring material. It takes a high durable polish. (GA)

- SCORING:** Grooving, usually horizontal, of portland cement plaster scratch coat to provide mechanical bond for the brown coat. Also a decorative grooving of the finish coat. (SEL & PB)
- SCRATCH COAT:** The first coat of plaster applied to a surface in three coat work. The term "scratch coat" originates from the practice of cross-raking or scratching the surface of this coat with a comblike tool to provide a mechanical key to aid bond with the brown coat. (GA) (SEL & PB)
- SCRATCH DOUBLE-UP:** See DOUBLE-UP.
- SCREEDS :** Devices or materials run across the base surface of a wall or ceiling to serve as thickness and alignment guides for the plasterer in subsequent applications. Plaster screeds are generally about 4" wide and of full base-coat thickness. (GA)
- SCREEDS (METAL):** Formed metal shapes attached to framing member or plaster base before plastering; serving as a guide in establishing plaster thickness and plane and serving as a separation between plaster and other materials. Examples: Concealed Picture Mold, Base Screed, or Parting Bead. (SEL & PB)
- SCRIM:** Rough textured woven cloth worked into brown or finish coat to add crack resistance to the plaster. Its use is now very rare. (GA)
- SCRAFFITO:** A decorative and artistic medium generally consisting of two layers of differently colored plaster. While still soft, the uppermost layer is scratched away, exposing the base or ground layer. Countless variations on the process are possible by modulation of pigments and combination with fresco techniques. Scraffito in Italian means "scratched". (GA)
- SELF-FURRING NAIL:** Galvanized low-carbon steel 1½ to 2½ by 0.106 inch nails with 3/8" flat head, medium diamond point and washer or spacer on shank. (SEL & PB)
- SET:** The change in mortar from a plastic, workable state to a solid rigid state. The hardening and hydration of a plaster. To convert an adhesive into a fixed or hardened state by chemical or physical action, such as condensation, polymerization, oxidation, vulcanization, gelation, hydration, or evaporation of volatile constituents. See SETTING TIME. (SEL & PB)
- SETTING TIME:** The elapsed time required for a gypsum plaster to attain a specified hardness and strength after mixing with water. (SEL & PB)
- SHEET LATH:** A type of metal lath formed by punching geometrical perforations in steel sheets. Made from heavier gauge steel than expanded laths, they consequently have greater stiffness. (GA)
- SHELF-LIFE:** The length of time packaged materials can be stored under specified conditions and still remain effective in use. (SEL & PB)
- SIEVE ANALYSIS:** A method of classifying aggregates according to proportional content of particles of various sizes. Classification is done with standard sieves. See GRADATION. (GA)
- SKIM COAT:** A term denoting a thin finish coat. Usually containing lime putty and troweled to a smooth surface. (GA)
- SLAKE:** A term denoting the process whereby lime putty is produced from quicklime. Slaking consists of adding quicklime to water and allowing the resulting slurry to age for at least two weeks. (GA)
- SLICKER:** A tool often used by the plasterer in place of the darby. It is made of a thin board bevelled on both sides, about 4 feet long and 6" to 8" wide, held by the thicker edge. (GA)
- SOFFIT:** The underside of a subordinate part or member of a building; such as a staircase, archway, cornice, eave, etc. (SEL&PB)
- SPOT GROUNDS:** Pieces of wood attached to the plaster base at various intervals for gauging plaster thickness. (GA)
- SPRAY TEXTURE:** A surface finish achieved by application of a finish coat material with a plastering machine or gun. (SEL & PB)
- STAFF:** Plaster casts of ornamental details made in molds and reinforced with fiber. Usually wired or nailed into place. (SEL&PB)
- STANDARD TIME-TEMPERATURE CURVE:** The prescribed table of temperatures at progressing time, from the start of a fire test, for the exposing fire; that given in the Methods of Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials (ASTM Designation E119) unless specified otherwise. (SEL & PB)
- STAPLE:** A U-shaped round or flat wire fastener. (SEL & PB)
- STICKER:** A piece of metal channel inserted in concrete or masonry wall for the attachment or support of wall furring channels. (SEL & PB)
- STIFFENER:** A horizontal metal shape tied to vertical members (studs or channels) of partitions or walls to brace them. (SEL&PB)

STORAGE LIFE: The period of time during which a packaged material can be stored under specified temperature and weather conditions and remain suitable for use. Sometimes called Shelf Life. (SEL & PB)

STRAIGHT EDGE: A true flat tool or rod used to straighten the brown coat or plaster screeds. (SEL & PB)

STUCCO¹:

1. A term denoting plaster used on exposed exterior locations. The term stucco is used without regard to specific composition of the material. Also termed "exterior plaster".
2. A term used within the manufacturing segment of the plaster industry to denote gypsum that has been partially or fully calcined but not yet processed into finished plaster. Also used to denote gypsum formulations for certain special industrial uses.
3. May be the colored finish coat only. (See INTERIOR STUCCO). (SEL & PB)

STUCCO²: A material used in a plastic state, which can be troweled to form, when set, a hard covering for the exterior walls or other exterior surfaces of any building or structure. Note: the word "stucco" is used without regard to the composition of the material, and is defined only with reference to its use and location of use as contrasted with the words "plaster" and "mortar". (GA)

STUCCO NETTING: See WOVEN WIRE FABRIC.

STRIP LATH¹: Strips of metal, wire, or wire fabric lath used over continuous joints of gypsum lath; at junctions of dissimilar materials; and to reinforce door and window openings at intersections of jamb with head and sill, and at arches and other locations to reinforce plaster subject to localized stresses. In Thincoat High Strength Plaster or Plaster Veneer plastic mesh or paper is used for these purposes. (SEL & PB)

STRIP LATH²: A narrow strip of diamond mesh metal lath sometimes applied as reinforcement over joints between sheets of gypsum lath, at the juncture of two different base materials, at corners of openings, etc. (GA)

STRIPITE: See STRIP LATH. (GA)

SUCTION: The absorptive quality of surfaces, such as a concrete, masonry, or gypsum lath to be plastered. (A plaster basecoat must also have suction in order to absorb water from succeeding coat and so induce bond.) Excessive suction should be controlled so that sufficient water will remain in each plaster coat to assure hydration. (SEL&PB)

SUSPENDED CEILING: A ceiling which is suspended from and is not in direct contact with the floor or roof construction above. (GA)

SWEAT OUT: A defective condition occasionally occurring in gypsum plaster. Characterized by a soft, damp area remaining after the surrounding area has set hard. Often caused by insufficient ventilation which inhibits normal drying. (GA)

TAPE: A plastic reinforcing mesh used to reinforce angles and to bridge lath joints in Thincoat High Strength or Veneer Plastering. (SEL & PB)

TELEGRAPHING: A condition in composite construction in which irregularities, imperfections or patterns of an inner layer are visibly transmitted to the surface. (SEL&PB)

TEMPER: To mix plaster to a workable consistency. (SEL & PB)

TEMPLATE: A gauge, pattern or mold used as a guide to produce arches, curves, moulds, and other shapes of a repetitive nature. (SEL & PB)

TEXTURE: A surface pattern as contrasted to a smooth finish. (SEL & PB)

THERMAL SHOCK: A stress created by an extreme change in temperature that may result in cracking of the plaster which has not yet attained its ultimate strength. (SEL&PB)

THERMOPLASTIC: Capable of being repeatedly softened by heat and hardened by cooling. (SEL & PB)

THERMOSETTING: Having the property of undergoing a chemical reaction by the action of heat, catalysts, ultraviolet light, etc., leading to a relatively infusible state. (SEL & PB)

THINCOAT HIGH-STRENGTH (VENEER) PLASTER: See "GYPSUM".

THIXOTROPY: Capable of being thinned by isothermal agitation and to thicken upon subsequent rest. (SEL & PB)

THREE COAT PLASTERING: The application of plaster in three successive coats, leaving time between coats for setting and/or drying of the plaster. (GA)

TIES: Two types used for attachment of lath.
(a) Butterfly tie, formed by twisting the wire and cutting so the two ends extend outward oppositely, and (b) the stub tie, which is twisted and cut at the twist. (See Saddle Ties). (SEL & PB)

TORPEDO SAND: A natural well-graded plastering sand obtained from pits along the Fox River, west of Chicago, Illinois. (SEL & PB)

- TROWEL:** A tool used by the plasterer to apply, spread, shape and smooth the various plastering mortars. The size of the trowel varies according to the mechanic's preference with regard to the tool's feel and balance. Common sizes are 10½" x 4½" and 11½" x 4 3/4". There are three parts of a trowel. These are called the blade, the mounting, and the handle. The following trowels are commonly used: margin trowel, angle trowel. Other trowels- joint trowel, panel trowel, and texture trowel. (GA)
- TROWEL FINISH:** A term denoting the smooth finish coat surface produced by troweling. (GA)
- TWO COAT PLASTERING:** See "DOUBLE UP METHOD". (GA)
- TWO COMPONENT SYSTEM:** A veneer plaster system involving two separate materials mixed and applied separately for base coat and finish coat. (SEL & PB)
- TURTLE BACK:** 1. A term often used synonymously with blistering. 2. A term used regionally to denote a small localized area of crazing. (SEL & PB)
- VAPOR:** The gaseous form of substances that are normally in the solid or liquid state and that can be changed to these states either by increasing the pressure or decreasing the temperature. (SEL & PB)
- VENEER PLASTER:** A calcined gypsum plaster specially manufactured to provide high strength, hardness and abrasion resistance when applied in thin coats over a veneer plaster base. (SEL & PB)
- VERMICULITE:** A mineral that when expanded by heat is used as a lightweight aggregate for plaster. (GA)
- WARP:** A significant variation from the original, true, or plane surface. (SEL & PB)
- WASH-OUT:** Lack of proper coverage and texture build-up in machine dash textured plaster caused by the mortar being too soupy. (SEL & PB)
- WAST MOLD:** A precast plaster mold made for the forming of decorative monolithic or cast-in-place concrete. Mold cannot be removed without being destroyed. (SEL & PB)
- WATER ABSORPTION:** The amount of water absorbed by a material under specified test conditions commonly expressed as weight percent of the test specimen. (SEL & PB)
- WATER-CEMENT RATIO:** The ratio of the amount of water, exclusive only of that absorbed by the aggregate, to the amount of cementitious material mixture, preferably stated as a decimal by weight. (SEL & PB)
- WATER OF CONVENIENCE:** The quantity of water, needed or included in a mix, for workability above that necessary for hydration of the cementitious component. (SEL & PB)
- WATERPROOFING:** Treatment of a surface or structure which prevents the passage of liquid water. (SEL & PB)
- WATER VAPOR TRANSMISSION (WWT):** The rate of water vapor flow, under steady specified conditions, through a unit area of a material, between its two parallel surfaces and normal to the surfaces. Metric unit of measurement is 1 g/24 h·m². See PERMEABILITY, PERMEANCE, PERM. (SEL & PB)
- WELDED WIRE LATH (INTERIOR OR EXTERIOR LATH):** A plaster base and reinforcement or cop-perbearing, soft annealed, galvanized wire, not lighter than 16 gauge, electrically welded at all intersections forming openings not to exceed 2 x 2 inches. Can be flat or self-furring. (SEL & PB)
- PAPER-BACKED:** Welded wire lath with an absorptive perforated paper separator and may have an additional paper backing or foil backing for purposes of waterproofing or insulation. Can be flat or self-furring. (SEL & PB)
- WHITE COAT:** A term denoting a gauged lime putty trowel finish. (GA)
- WIRE (CLOTH) LATH:** A plaster reinforcement of wire not lighter than No. 19 gauge, 2½ meshes per inch, galvanized or coated with rust inhibitive paint. (Not to be used as reinforcement for exterior plastering.) (SEL & PB)
- WOOD FIBER¹:** Ground or shredded, non-staining wood used as an aggregate with gypsum plaster. (GA)
- WOOD FIBER²:** Ground or shredded, non-staining wood used as an aggregate with gypsum plaster. A material produced by grinding or shredding wood. (SEL & PB)
- WOOD-FIBERED PLASTER:** A calcined gypsum plaster containing shredded or ground wood fiber added during manufacture. (SEL & PB)
- WORKABILITY:** A property of plaster mortar closely related to plasticity which determines the ease and speed with which the mortar can be applied and finished. (SEL & PB)
- WORKING LIFE:** The period of time during which an adhesive, after mixing with catalyst, solvent or other compounding ingredients, remains suitable for use. (SEL & PB)

WOVEN WIRE FABRIC: A plaster reinforcement of galvanized wire, not lighter than No. 18 gauge when woven into 1 inch openings, or not lighter than No. 17 gauge when woven into $1\frac{1}{2}$ inch openings. Lath may be paper-backed, flat, or self-furring. (To be used as reinforcement of Exterior Plastering.) (SEL & PB)

YIELD VALUE: The stress (either normal or shear) at which a marked increase in deformation occurs without an increase in load. (SEL & PB)

- AGGREGATE COATINGS: Hand or machine-applied aggregate over a portland cement, epoxy or other synthetic base coat. (CSI)

For other terms relating to this Section,
see terms in:

Section 09400 - Terrazzo
Section 09700 - Special Flooring
Section 09800 - Special Coatings
Section 09900 - Painting

ADHESIVE, CONTACT: Bonds layers of gypsum-board, it forms a strong instantaneous bond after the two surfaces are brought in contact. (GA)

ADHESIVE, LAMINATING: Bonds one gypsum-board to another in multiple-layer construction, or it bonds gypsumboard to suitable masonry or concrete surfaces. The bond generally develops slowly as the adhesive dries. (GA)

ADHESIVE, STUD: Used for attaching single-ply gypsumboard to framing. (GA)

BACK BLOCKING: A single-ply installation procedure for reinforcing joints that fall between framing members with strips of gypsumboard. This helps prevent surface imperfections such as cracking and joint ridging. (GA)

BACKING BOARD (GYPSUM): Used as a base layer where multiple plies of gypsumboard are required for extra fire resistance, sound isolation and strength in the wall. It is surfaced with gray liner paper on both sides. Water-resistant gypsum backing board has a water-resistant gypsum core and water repellent face paper. It is much more resistant to absorption of water than untreated gypsumboard. It serves as a base for application of wall tile in baths, showers and other wet areas. (GA)

BEADING: See Ridging. (GA)

BUTT JOINT: Joints in which board ends with the core exposed are butted together. (GA)

CONTROL JOINT: A predetermined opening between adjoining panels or surfaces at regular intervals to relieve the stresses of expansion and contraction transverse to the joint in large wall and ceiling area. (GA)

CORNER CRACKING: Cracks occurring in the joint of inside corners, between intersecting walls or at walls and ceilings. (GA)

CORNER-FLOATING: See Floating Angles. (GA)

CRIMPING: A method of fastening corner beads in place or fixing metal studs in runners by pinching and deforming the metal using a special tool. (GA)

CROSS FURRING: Furring members installed across or at right angles to framing members or runners. (GA)

CROWN, JOINT: The maximum height above the surface to which treating compound is applied over the wallboard joint. (GA)

EDGES: Paper bound edges which usually run the long dimension of the board. (GA)

ENDS: Mill or job-cut edges which expose the gypsum core. They usually run the short dimension of the board. (GA)

FASTENER TREATMENT: Concealing fasteners which are set below the surface of the dry-wall by successive application of joint compound until a smooth surface is achieved. (GA)

FEATHER EDGING (FEATHERING): Tapering joint compound to a very thin edge to blend with the adjacent wallboard surface. (GA)

FIELD: The surface of the board exclusive of the perimeter. (GA)

FINISHING: The taping of joints, the concealment with joint treatment compound of such joints, heads of fasteners, and edges of corner protective devices, and the sanding of such areas to prepare them to receive the field application of priming, painting, coating, decorative coating and coverings such as wallpaper and vinyl materials. (GA)

FIRE-BLOCK GYPSUMBOARD: Used under combustible roof coverings to protect rafters and the rest of the structure from fires started on the roof. It also serves as additional protection against fires within the structure. (GA)

FLOATING ANGLES: Mechanical fasteners at interior angles are omitted to relieve stresses that might otherwise cause cracking and nail popping. (GA)

FRAMING: The supporting members such as wall studs, ceiling joists, and roof trusses. They may or may not bear part of the load of the building. (GA)

FURRING: Wood or metal members used to provide properly spaced, rigid and even support for gypsumboard. These are fastened over or attached to underlying construction of framing, concrete or masonry which is not in suitable condition for application of gypsumboard. (GA)

FIRE RATING: The time in hours that a wall, ceiling, beam, column or roof deck will contain a fire when tested in accordance with requirements of ASTM Standard E119. (GA)

GYPSUMBOARD: The name for a family of noncombustible sheet products consisting of a gypsum core between paper surfaces. The core may be regular, water-resistant, special fire-resistant or a combination of these. (GA)

GYPSUM COREBOARD: Used as a base in space saving self-supporting gypsum walls erected without framing and in demountable walls. Coreboard is made as one in. thick solid gypsum backing board or it is factory laminated from two layers of 1/2 in. thick gypsum backing board. (GA)

GYPSUM FORMBOARD: Used as a support and permanent form to hold gypsum concrete in poured gypsum roof decks. (GA)

GYPSUM LATH: Used as a base for regular gypsum plaster. (GA)

GYPSUM SHEATHING: Used to stiffen exterior frame walls against the forces of wind and vibration, and to provide fire resistance. This is covered with an exterior finish, such as siding. (GA)

GYPSUM VENEER BASE: Used as a base for thin coats of very hard, high-strength, gypsum veneer plaster. (GA)

Horizontal application: Horizontally applied boards have the edges at right angles to the framing members.

Joint Beading: See Ridging.

Joint Compound: A material used to conceal fasteners, joints and surface indentations in gypsum drywall construction. See ASTM C-475.

Joint Treatment: The method of concealing wallboard joints with tape and layers of joint compound. (GA)

NAILS, DRYWALL: Nails suitable for drywall application. Standard Specifications for Nails for the Application of Gypsum Wallboard, ASTM C514. Special nails for predecorated gypsum board should be as recommended by predecorated gypsum board manufacturer. (GA)

NAIL POPPING: A protrusion of nailhead and compound directly over the nailhead, caused by outward movement of the nail relative to the gypsumboard. (GA)

NAIL SPOTTING: See Fastener Treatment. (GA)

PREDECORATED GYPSUM WALLBOARD: Has a decorative vinyl or paper sheet bonded to the front (exposed) surface which does not require further decorative treatment. (GA)

RIDGING: A linear surface protrusion along the treated joints. (GA)

SCREWS, DRYWALL: Screws developed for wallboard application. Standard Specification for Steel Drill Screws for the Application of Gypsum Sheet Material to Light-Gage Steel Studs, ASTM C 646. Specially designed metal screws as recommended by the manufacturer of the gypsum board should be used for gypsum board application to wood framing or to gypsum studs. (GA)

SHEET LAMINATION: Multi-ply construction with adhesives applied to the entire surface to be bonded. (See Adhesive, Laminating). (GA)

STAPLES: Number 16 USS gauge flattened galvanized wire staples with 7/16 inch wide crown outside measure and divergent point for the first ply only of two-ply gypsum board application:

1 in. long legs for 3/8 in. thick gypsum board.

1 1/8 in. long legs for 1/2 in. thick gypsum board.

1 1/4 in. long legs for 5/8 in. thick gypsum board. (GA)

STRIP LAMINATION: Multi-ply construction with adhesive applied in parallel strips usually spaced 16 in. or 24 in. apart. (GA)

SOUND TRANSMISSION CLASS (STC): Numbers used by engineers and architects to rate resistance to air-borne sound transmission. (GA)

TAPING: Embedding tape in joint compound in the process of joint treatment. See ASTM 475. (GA)

TREATED JOINT: A joint between gypsum boards which is reinforced and concealed with tape and joint treatment compound, or covered by strip moldings. (GA)

TYPE X GYPSUMBOARD: Similar in all respects to the previously mentioned boards, except that the core has been made more fire-resistant by the addition of glass fiber reinforcement and other materials. It may be wallboard, backing board, predecorated, or other types. Type "X" boards are used in most fire-resistance rated assemblies. (GA)

UNTREATED JOINT: Joint which is left exposed. (GA)

VERTICAL APPLICATION: Vertically applied boards have the edges parallel to framing members. (GA)

- ABSORPTION:** The relationship of the weight of water absorbed to the weight of the dry specimen, expressed in percent. (ASTM)
- ACCELERATORS:** Materials used to speed up the setting of mortar. (CTI)
- ACCESSORIES:** Ceramic or nonceramic fixtures such as towel bars, paper and soap holders, grab bars and the like. (CTI)
- ADHESIVE TILE:** See Organic Adhesive.
- BACK WALL:** The wall facing an observer who is standing at the entrance to a room, shower or tub shower. (CTI)
- BACKING:** Any material used as a base over which a finished material is to be installed. (CTI)
- BACK-MOUNTED TILE:** See Mounted Tile.
- BASE:** One or more rows of tile installed above the floor. See Cove. (CTI)
- BEATING BLOCK:** A block used to embed tiles in a flat plane. The method used is called Beating In. (CTI)
- BENCH MARK:** Permanent reference point or mark. (CTI)
- BLOCK ANGLE:** A square of tile specially made for changing direction of the trim. (CTI)
- BODY:** The structural portion of a ceramic article. This term also refers to the material or mixture from which the article is made. (ASTM)
- BOND:** The adherence of one material to another. Effective bonds must be achieved between the mortar and scratch coat, between the tile and mortar and between the adhesive and backing. (CTI)
- BOND COAT:** A material used between the back of the tile and the prepared surface. Suitable bond coats include pure portland cement, dry-set portland cement mortar, latex portland cement mortar, organic adhesive and epoxy mortar or adhesive. (CTI)
- BRIDGE:** A straightedge used as a starting line for the laying of tile. The straight-edge can be blocked up to support tile over an opening. (CTI)
- BULLNOSE:** A trim tile with a convex radius on one edge. This tile is used for finishing the top of a wainscot or for turning an outside corner. (CTI)
- BULLNOSE CORNER:** A type of bullnose trim with a convex radius on two adjacent edges. (CTI)
- BUSHHAMMER:** A hammer that has a rectangular head with serrated or jagged faces. The bushhammer is used for roughing concrete to provide a bond for masonry. (CTI)
- BUTTERING:** The spreading of a bond coat (followed by a mortar coat, a thin-setting bed mortar or an organic adhesive) to the backs of ceramic tile just before the tile is placed. (CTI)
- CAP:** See Bullnose.
- CAULKING COMPOUND:** Waterproof caulking material usually sold in tubes. See also Sealant. (CTI)
- CERAMIC MOSAIC TILE:** Tile formed by either the dust-pressed or plastic method, usually 1/4 to 3/8 inch thick, and having a facial area of less than six square inches. Ceramic mosaic tile may be of either porcelain or natural clay composition and they may be either plain or with an abrasive mixture throughout. (TCA)
- CERAMIC TILE:** See definition for Tile.
- CHALK LINE:** Usually cotton cord coated with chalk. The cord is snapped to mark a straight line. The chalk line is used to align spots or screeds. (CTI)
- CHEMICAL-RESISTANT GROUT:** A grout that resists the effects of prolonged contact with acids and other chemical agents. (TCA)
- CLEAVAGE MEMBRANE:** A membrane that provides a separation and slip sheet between the mortar setting bed and the backing or base surface. (TCA)
- COLD JOINT:** Any point in a tile installation where tile and setting bed have terminated and the surface has lost its plasticity before work is continued. (CTI)
- COMMERCIAL PORTLAND CEMENT GROUT:** A mixture of portland cement and other ingredients to produce a water-resistant, dense, uniformly colored material. (TCA)
- CONCRETE, GLASS FIBER REINFORCED BACKER BOARD:** A backer board designed for use with ceramic tile in wet areas. It can be used in place of metal lath, portland cement scratch coat and mortar bed. (TCA)
- CONDUCTIVE MORTAR:** A tile mortar to which specific electrical conductivity is imparted through the use of conductive additives. (TCA)
- CONDUCTIVE TILE:** Tile made from special body compositions or by methods that result in specific properties of electrical conductivity while retaining other normal physical properties of tile. (TCA)
- CONTROL JOINTS:** See Expansion Joints.

- COVE:** A trim tile unit having one edge with a concave radius. A cove is used to form a junction between the bottom wall course and the floor or to form an inside corner. (TCA)
- COVE BASE (SANITARY):** A trim tile having a concave radius on one edge and a convex radius on the opposite edge. This base often is used as the only course of tile above the floor tile. (CTI)
- DRAWLING:** A parting and contraction of the glaze on the surface of ceramic ware during drying or firing, resulting in unglazed areas bordered by coalesced glaze. (ASTM)
- DRAZING:** The cracking that occurs in fired glazes or other ceramic coatings due to critical tensile stresses (minute surface cracks). (ASTM)
- CRYSTALLINE GLAZE:** See under Glaze.
- CUSHION-EDGED TILE:** Tile on which the facial edges have a distinct curvature that results in a slightly recessed joint. (CTI)
- DASH COAT:** A first coat of mortar sometimes applied to a smooth surface with a whisk broom or fiber brush in such a manner as to provide good mechanical key for subsequent mortar coats. (CSI)
- DOUBLE BULLNOSE:** A type of trim with the same convex radius on two opposite sides. (CTI)
- DRY-SET GROUT:** A mixture of portland cement and additives providing water retentivity. (TCA)
- DRY-SET MORTAR:** A mixture of portland cement with sand and additives imparting water retentivity which is used as a bond coat for setting tile. When this mortar is used, neither the tile nor walls normally have to be soaked during the installation process. (TCA)
- DUSTING:** The application of dry portland cement to a wet floor or deck mortar surface. A pure coat is thus formed by suction of the dry cement. (CTI)
- EDGEBONDED TILE:** See definition for Pregrouted Tile.
- EDGE-MOUNTED TILE:** A type of mounted tile wherein tile is assembled into units or sheets and are bonded to each other at the edges or corners of the back of the tiles by an elastomeric or resinous material which becomes an integral part of the tile installation. Units or sheets must meet criteria of back-mounted sheets. See definition for Mounted Tile. (TCA)
- EFFLORESCENCE:** The residue deposited on the surface of a material (usually grout joints) by the crystallization of soluble salts. (CTI)
- EPOXY ADHESIVE:** An adhesive system employing epoxy resin and epoxy hardener portions. (TCA)
- EPOXY GROUT:** A mortar system employing epoxy resin and epoxy hardener portions. (TCA)
- EPOXY MORTAR:** A grout system employing epoxy resins and hardener portions, often containing coarse silica filler, usually formulated for industrial and commercial installations where chemical resistance is of paramount importance. (TCA)
- EXPANSION JOINT:** A joint through tile, mortar, and reinforcing wire down to the substrate. (CTI)
- EXTRUDED TILE:** A tile or trim unit that is formed when plastic clay mixtures are forced through a pug mill opening (die) of suitable configuration, resulting in a continuous ribbon of formed clay. A wire cutter or similar cut-off device is then used to cut the ribbon into appropriate lengths and widths of tile. (TCA)
- FACE-MOUNTED TILE:** See Mounted Tile.
- FAIENCE TILE:** Glazed or unglazed tile, generally made by the plastic process with characteristic variations in the face, edges and glaze. These variations produce a handcrafted, decorative effect. (ASTM)
- FAN or FANNING:** Spacing tile joints to widen certain areas so they will conform to a section that is not parallel. (CTI)
- FEATURE STRIP (DECORATED LINES):** A narrow strip of tile that has a contrasting color, texture or trim. (CTI)
- FIELD TILE:** An area of tile covering a wall or floor. The field is bordered by tile trim. (CTI)
- FLOATING:** A method of using a straight-edge to align mortar with the float strips or screeds. This technique also is called Dragging, Pulling, Rodding or Rodding Off. (CTI)
- FREEHAND FLOATING:** The application of wall mortar without the use of guide screeds. This technique is used by specialists when they are setting glass mosaic murals. (CTI)
- FURAN GROUT:** A chemical-resistant grout system consisting of a furan resin and hardener portions. (TCA)
- FURRING:** Stripping used to build out a surface such as a studded wall where strips of suitable size are added to the studs to accommodate vent pipes or other fixtures. (TCA)
- GLAZE:** A ceramic coating matured to the glassy state on a formed ceramic article. The term "Glaze" also refers to the material or mixture from which the coating is made. (ASTM)

- Bright Glaze:** A high-gloss coating with or without color. (ASTM)
- Clear Glaze:** A transparent glaze with or without color. (ASTM)
- Crystalline Glaze:** A glaze that contains microscopic crystals. (ASTM)
- Fritted Glaze:** A glaze in which a part or all of the fluxing constituents are prefused. (ASTM)
- Mat Glaze:** A low-gloss ceramic glaze with or without color. (ASTM)
- Opaque Glaze:** A nontransparent glaze with or without color. (ASTM)
- Raw Glaze:** A glaze compounded primarily from raw constituents. It contains no prefused materials. (ASTM)
- Semimat Glaze:** A medium-gloss ceramic glaze with or without color. (ASTM)
- Speckled Glaze:** A glaze containing granules of oxides or ceramic stains that are of contrasting colors. (TCA)
- GLAZED TILE:** Tile with a fused impervious facial finish composed of ceramic materials, fused to the body of the tile which may be nonvitreous, semivitreous, vitreous or impervious. (TCA)
- GLAZED TILE (EXTRA DUTY GLAZE):** Tile with a durable glaze. This tile is suitable for floors and other interior surfaces that are not subject to excessive abrasion or impact. (ASTM)
- GRADE:** A predetermined degree of slope that a finished floor should have. (CTI)
- GRADES:** There are only two grades of tile recognized in TCA and/or ANSI standard specifications for ceramic tile--Standard and Seconds. Various other grade names used by architects, manufacturers and contractors may be without definition or specification, which can cause confusion and substitution. Standard grade tile meets the requirements defined in TCA and ANSI Standards. Second grade (seconds) tile meets all of the requirements of the same standards except that inspection for facial defects is conducted at a distance of 10 feet instead of 3 feet as required for standard grade tile. (TCA)
- GROUT:** A cementitious or other type material used for filling joints between tile. (TCA)
- GROUTING:** The process of filling the tile joints with grout. (TCA)
- HARD SCREED:** A mortar screed that has become firm. (CTI)
- HORIZONTAL BROKEN JOINTS:** A style of laying tile with each course offset one-half its length. (CTI)
- IMPERVIOUS TILE:** Tile with water absorption of 0.5 percent or less. (TCA)
- L CUT:** A piece of tile cut or shaped to the letter L. (CTI)
- LATEX-PORTLAND CEMENT MORTAR:** A mixture of portland cement, sand and a special latex additive which is used as a bond coat for setting tile. (TCA)
- LATH:** Metal mesh which acts as a background or reinforcing agent for the scratch coat or mortar. (TCA)
- LEG:** A tile wall running alongside a bathtub or abutment. This term sometimes is used to describe a narrow strip of tile floor. (CTI)
- LEVELING COAT:** See Plumb Scratch.
- LUGS:** See Self-Spacing Tile.
- MASTIC GROUT:** A one-part grouting composition that is used directly from the container. (TCA)
- MORTAR BED:** The layer of mortar on which tile is set. The final coat of mortar on a wall, floor or ceiling is called a mortar bed. (TCA)
- MOSAICS:** Small tile or bits of tile, stone or glass. These are used to form a surface design or an intricate pattern. (CTI)
- MOUNTED TILE:** Tile assembled into units or sheets by suitable material to facilitate handling and installation. Tile may be face-mounted, back-mounted or edge-mounted. Face-mounted tile assemblies may have paper or other suitable material applied to the face of each tile, usually by water soluble adhesives so that it can be easily removed after installation but prior to grouting of the joints. Back-mounted tile assemblies may have perforated paper, fiber mesh, resin or other suitable material bonded to the back and/or edges of each tile which becomes an integral part of the tile installation. Back-mounted and edge-mounted tile assemblies shall have a sufficient exposure of tile and joints surrounding each tile to comply with bond strength requirements. Tile manufacturers must specify whether back-mounted and edge-mounted tile assemblies are suitable for installation in swimming pools, on exterior and/or in wet areas. (TCA)
- NATURAL CLAY TILE:** A ceramic mosaic tile or a paver tile made by either the dust-pressed or the plastic method, from clays that produce a dense body having a distinctive slightly textured appearance. (TCA)
- NEAT CEMENT:** Portland cement mixed with water to a desired creamy consistency. (CTI)

- NOMINAL SIZES:** This is the approximate facial size or thickness of tile, expressed in inches or fractions of an inch, for general reference. (TCA)
- NONVITREOUS TILE:** Tile with water absorption of more than 7.0 percent. (TCA)
- NOTCH TROWEL:** A trowel with a serrated or notched edge. It is used for spreading tile mortar or adhesive in ridges of a specific thickness. (TCA)
- OPEN TIME:** The period of time during which the bond coat retains its ability to adhere to the tile and bond the tile to the substrate. (CTI)
- ORGANIC ADHESIVE:** A prepared organic material, ready to use with no further addition of liquid or powder, which cures or sets by evaporation. (TCA)
- PAPER AND WIRE:** Tar paper and wire mesh (or metal lath) that are used as a backing for the installation of tile. (CTI)
- PAVER TILE:** Glazed or unglazed porcelain or natural clay tile formed by the dust-pressed method having six square inches or more of facial area. (TCA)
- PENCIL ROD:** Reinforcing steel rod with a diameter of 1/4 inch. (CTI)
- PLUMB:** Perpendicular to a true level. (CTI)
- PLUMB SCRATCH:** An additional scratch coat that has been applied to obtain a uniform setting bed on a plumb vertical plane. (CTI)
- POINTING MIX:** Mortar with a consistency of stiff paste. The mix is forcibly compressed into the tile joints where it hardens. (CTI)
- PORCELAIN TILE:** A ceramic mosaic tile or paver tile that is generally made by the dust-pressed method, of a composition resulting in a tile that is dense, impervious, fine grained and smooth with sharply formed face. (TCA)
- POT LIFE:** The period of time during which a material maintains its workable properties after it has been mixed. (CTI)
- PREFLOAT:** The term used to describe mortar that has been placed and allowed to harden prior to bonding tile to it with thin-set materials. (CTI)
- PREGROUTED TILE:** A surfacing unit consisting of an assembly of ceramic tile bonded together at their edges by a material, generally elastomeric, which seals the joints completely. Such material (grout) may fill the joint completely, or partially and may cover all, a portion or none of the back surfaces of the tiles in the sheets. The perimeter of these factory pregouted sheets may include the entire, or part of the joint between the sheets or none at all. The term Edgebonded Tile is sometimes used to designate a particular type of pregouted tile sheets having the front and back surfaces completely exposed.
- PURE COAT:** Neat cement applied to the mortar bed. (CTI)
- QUARRY TILE:** Glazed or unglazed tile made by the extrusion process from natural clay or shale usually having six square inches (39 cm²) or more of facial area. (TCA)
- RACK:** A metal grid that is used to properly space and align floor tiles. (CTI)
- RAKE or RAKE LINE:** The inclination from a horizontal direction. (CTI)
- RECEPTOR:** A metallic or nonmetallic waterproof support for a shower stall. (TCA)
- RETURN:** The ending of a small splash wall or a wainscot at right angles to the major wall. (CTI)
- ROUGHING IN:** The act of preparing a surface by applying tar paper and metal lath (or wire mesh). Sometimes called Wiring. (CTI)
- RUBBER SPACERS:** Cross and tee-shaped objects used to space tile on floors or walls. They are manufactured in thicknesses of 1/16", 1/8", 1/4", 3/8" and 1/2". (CTI)
- RUBBING STONE:** A carborundum stone that is used to smooth the rough edges of tile. (CTI)
- RUNNING BOND:** Stretchers overlapping one another by one-half unit with vertical joint in alternate courses. (CSI)
- SAG:** A term used when a wall surface has developed a slide. (CTI)
- SANDBLASTING:** A method of scarifying the surface of concrete or masonry to provide a bondable surface. Compressed air is used to propel a stream of wet or dry sand onto the surface. (CTI)
- SAND PORTLAND CEMENT GROUT:** An on-the-job mixture of portland cement, fine graded sand, lime and water. (TCA)
- SCARIFIER:** A piece of thin sheet metal with teeth or serrations cut in the edge. It is used to roughen fresh mortar surfaces to achieve a good bond for the tile. A scarifier also can be used to roughen the surface of concrete. (TCA)
- SCRATCH COAT:** A mixture of portland cement, sand and water applied as the first coat of mortar on a wall or ceiling. Its surface usually is scratched or roughened so that it will bond properly with subsequent coats of mortar. (TCA)
- SCRATCHER:** Any serrated or sharply tined object that is used to roughen the surface of one coat of mortar to provide a mechanical key for the next coat. See also Scarifier. (CTI)

- SCREED:** A strip of wood, metal, mortar or other material applied to a surface. Screeds are used as guides on which a straightedge is worked to obtain a true mortar surface. (TCA)
- SCREED STRIP:** A wooden, metal or plastic strip that forms a guide upon which a screed is worked to obtain a true mortar surface. (CSI)
- SEALANT:** An elastomeric material that is used to fill and seal the expansion joint. This material prevents the passage of moisture and allows horizontal and lateral movement at the expansion joint. (CTI)
- SELF-SPACING TILE:** Tile with lugs, spacers or protuberances on the sides which automatically space the tile for the grout joints. (TCA)
- SEMIVITREOUS TILE:** Tile with water absorption of more than 3.0 percent, but not more than 7.0 percent. (TCA)
- SHELF LIFE:** The period of time that an item can be stored before it is used. (TCA)
- SILICONE RUBBER GROUT:** An engineered elastomeric grout system for interior use. (TCA)
- SINK ANGLE:** Trim shape used on a drainboard at the corners of the kitchen sink. This trim shape, which is AU 106, also is called a Butterfly. (TCA)
- SLIDE:** A fresh tile wall that has buckled or sagged. This condition may be caused by excessive mortar, insufficient lime in the mortar or excessive moisture in the scratch coat. A slide may also result if the surface is slick or the mortar is too soft. (CTI)
- SLIP-RESISTANT TILE:** Tile having greater slip-resistant characteristics due to an abrasive admixture, abrasive particles in the surface or grooves or patterns in the surface. (TCA)
- SLOT CUT:** Description of a tile that has been cut to fit around pipes or switch boxes. This tile is usually in the shape of the letter H or the letter L. (CTI)
- SLURRY COAT:** A pure coat of a very soft consistency. (CTI)
- SOAPING TILE:** The method of applying a soapy film to newly tiled walls to protect them from paint and plaster during construction. (TCA)
- SOLDIER COURSE:** Oblong tile laid with the long side vertical and all joints in alignment. (CTI)
- SPACING MIX:** A dry or dampened mixture of one part portland cement and one part extra-fine sand. This mix is used as a filler in the joints of mounted ceramic mosaic tiles to keep them evenly spaced during installation. (CTI)
- SPECIAL PURPOSE TILE:** Tile, either glazed or unglazed, made to meet or to have special physical design or appearance characteristics such as size, thickness, shape, color or decoration; keys or lugs on backs or sides; pregouted assemblies or sheets; special resistance to staining, frost alkalis, acids, thermal shock, physical impact, or high coefficient of friction. (TCA)
- SPLASH WALLS:** The walls of a tile drainboard or bathtub. (CTI)
- SPLIT L CUT:** An improper L cut that is made by splitting a tile instead of cutting it. (CTI)
- SPOTS:** Small pieces of tile placed on a wall or floor surface to align the screeds or setting bed. Spots of casting plaster also may be used. (CTI)
- STRAIGHT JOINT:** The usual style of laying tile where all the joints are in alignment. (CTI)
- STRAIGHTEDGE:** A straight piece of lumber that is used to rod mortar and to align tile. (CTI)
- STRETCHER:** Trim shapes of tile between trim angles. (CTI)
- STRIKING JOINTS:** A process of removing excess grout from the joints by wiping with a sponge or cloth or scraping with a curved instrument. (TCA)
- SUBSTRATE:** The underlying support for the ceramic tile installation. (TCA)
- THIN-SET:** The term used to describe the installation of tile with all materials except portland-cement mortar which is the only recognized thick-bed method. (TCA)
- TIE WIRE:** The 18-gauge galvanized wire used in construction work. (CTI)
- TILE:** A ceramic surfacing unit, usually relatively thin in relation to facial area, made from clay or a mixture of clay and other ceramic materials, called the body of the tile, having either a glazed or unglazed face and fired above red heat in the course of manufacture to a temperature sufficiently high to produce specific physical properties and characteristics. (ASTM)
- TILE ASSEMBLIES:** See definition for Mounted Tile.
- TRIM UNITS:** Units of various shapes consisting of such items as bases, caps, corners, mouldings, angles, etc., necessary to achieve an installation of the desired sanitary and/or architectural design. (TCA)

UNGLAZED TILE: A hard, dense tile of uniform composition throughout, deriving color and texture from the materials of which the body is made. (TCA)

VERTICAL BROKEN JOINT: Style of laying tile with each vertical row of tile offset for half its length. (CTI)

VITREOUS TILE: Tile with water absorption of more than 0.5 percent, but not more than 3.0 percent. (TCA)

VITRIFICATION: The condition resulting when kiln temperatures are sufficient to fuse grains and close pores of a clay product, making the mass impervious. (CSI)

WALL TILE: A glazed tile with a body that is suitable for interior use and which is usually nonvitreous, and is not required nor expected to withstand excessive impact or be subject to freezing and thawing conditions. (TCA)

WET AREA: An area that is normally exposed to moisture such as a shower, tub, splash wall or exterior surface. (CTI)

- ACETYLENE CARBON BLACK:** The vehicle that conducts static electricity through a terrazzo floor system. (CSI)
- AGGREGATE:** A granule, other than marble, used in the topping; i.e., abrasives, quartz, granite, river gravel, synthetic types, etc. For our purpose, marble will be referred to as "chips". (NTMA)
- ART MARBLE:** Artificial marble; precast terrazzo. (NTMA)
- BONDING AGENTS:** Materials generally applied to "thinset" terrazzo; i.e., latex, epoxy, polyurethane or other types of adhesives. Used to increase adherence of the terrazzo mix to an existing base slab. (NTMA)
- BROKEN MARBLE:** Fractured slabs of marble (not crushed by machines into chips). (NTMA)
- CHIPS:** Marble granules screened to various sizes. (NTMA)
- CLEANER:** A neutral liquid cleaner used to remove accumulated surface dirt. (NTMA)
- COLOR PIGMENTS:** Inorganic matter used in the terrazzo mix to vary the color. A powdered substance which, when blended with a liquid vehicle, gives the matrix its coloring. (NTMA)
- CONTROL JOINTS:** Allowance made by the use of a strip, saw cut or other device to allow for movement without damaging the terrazzo. (NTMA)
- CURING:** The maintaining of proper moisture and temperature conditions necessary for the normal hydration of portland cement to take place. (NTMA)
- GROUT:** A portland cement and water paste used as the binder and sometimes having color pigment and/or bonding compound applied to the floor to fill the voids and pits after rough grinding. (NTMA)
- MARBLE:** A metamorphic (recrystallized) limestone, composed predominantly of crystalline grains of calcite or dolomite or both, having interlocking or mosaic texture. (NTMA)
- MATRIX:** The portland cement and water mix or noncementitious binder used to hold the marble chips in place for the terrazzo topping. (NTMA)
- PANELS:** The spaces formed by the divider strips. (NTMA)
- PRECAST:** Fabricated in molds, in a shop or factory, by a compression and vibratory method. (NTMA)
- SCREED:** To level the top of a mortar bed with a wood or metal strip (called a screed). (NTMA)
- SEALER:** A protective coating or treatment which precludes foreign liquid or matter from being absorbed, by closing the pores in the surface. (NTMA)
- SETTING BED:** Applicable to vertical surfaces. Backing of cement plaster to receive terrazzo wainscot or base. (NTMA)
- SURFACING:** The grinding, grouting and finishing operations on terrazzo topping. (NTMA)
- TERRAZZO:** Derived from the Italian "terrace" or "terrasso" and by definition over the centuries: "A form of mosaic flooring made by embedding small pieces of marble in mortar and polishing". (CSI)
- TESSERAE:** Thin slices of marble, colorful stone, or glass-like, highly colored vitreous enamel material cut into squares or other shapes of any size. Used in mosaic work. (NTMA)
- THINSETS:** Terrazzo systems which can be applied in a thin cross-section (3/8 inch or less). (NTMA)
- TOPPING:** The wearing surface of the terrazzo floor. (NTMA)
- UNDERBED:** A horizontal layer of mortar; a base, a bond and a level for terrazzo topping; a bed for divider strips. (NTMA)

- ACCESS DOOR:** A metal door that comes in various sizes and is framed into an acoustical ceiling to provide access to mechanical values in the plenum. Some standard sizes are 12"x12", 12"x24", 12"x18", 18"x18", 24"x24", 24"x36". (CISCA)
- ACCESS TAB:** A special spline with an exposed tab for making a (or any) particular tile in a Z-Bar system removable. (CISCA)
- ACCESS TILE:** An acoustical tile with special kerfing details that is removable. (CISCA)
- ACOUSTICAL CEILING BOARD (LAY-IN PANEL):** Usually 24"x24" or 24" x 48" or large-sized acoustical material used in conjunction with a lay-in grid system. (CISCA)
- ACOUSTICAL CEMENT:** A special type of adhesive or mastic used to stick up or adhere tile to concrete or gypsum board. Normally spots of adhesive the size of a walnut are used to stick up a 12"x12" acoustical tile. (CISCA)
- ACOUSTICAL TILE:** Normally a 12"x12" or 12"x24" piece of prefinished material with various surface finishes installed on furring or cemented to a ceiling or wall surface to provide improved sound absorption (reflection) qualities. (CISCA)
- AIR FLOW CEILING:** A ceiling with through perforated panels and a pressurized plenum above that allows the air to pass through it at a predetermined rate. Used for heating and cooling. (CISCA)
- ANNULAR NAIL:** A serrated nail used to fasten gypsum board to nailing channels. (CISCA)
- ATTACHED CEILING:** An acoustical ceiling where the furring is attached to the structure with no hangers involved. Acoustical tile cemented to concrete is also an attached ceiling. (CISCA)
- BARS:**
- H-Bar:** This is the main runner in the H and T system. It consists of metal strips with 3/4" flanges and 1" web height which appear to be "H's" turned on their sides. They are clipped to 1-1/2" channel not over four feet on center.
- Spacer Bar:** A V-shaped bar with notches at each end that hooks over two main T's in a concealed grid system to stabilize them.
- Stabilizer Bar:** See "Spacer Bar".
- Concealed Cross T:** A tee-shaped intermediate member used to support the acoustical tile in a Z-Bar or H and T system perpendicular to the Z or H member.
- Cross T-Bars:** The intermediate exposed cross members that interlock with the main tee to complete a grid system.
- Exposed T-Bar:** The main T-runner in a grid system hung from the overhead structure above with wire hangers.
- Main-T-Bar:** See "exposed T-Bar".
- Z-Bar Concealed:** Metal strips which are attached to the 1-1/2" carrying channel, two, three or four feet on center and right angles to the channel. Also called "Zee runners".
- Z-Bar Exposed:** A white painted finish Z-Bar clipped to 1-1/2" channels to support acoustical tile on the exposed flange of the Z. (CISCA)
- BACK CUT:** Cutting the border tile at a 45° angle to achieve the best possible fit, or that portion of a tile cut back above the kerf in a tile. (CISCA)
- BACKING BOARD:** Normally a 24"x96" gypsum board used as base for cementing acoustical tile. (CISCA)
- BAFFLE:** Usually called sound baffle and is a piece of acoustical material hung vertically from a structure for sound absorption. Baffles are normally used where it is not practical to install a complete acoustical ceiling. (CISCA)
- BEAM CLIP:** A clip that can be fastened to a beam to support a hanger wire or strap. (CISCA)
- BENCH MARK:** The elevation or a reference point from which is determined the correct height of a ceiling. (CISCA)
- BEVEL EDGE:** An acoustical tile is considered bevel edge material when the face of the tile turns up at the edge at approximately 45° for 1/8" to 1" around the perimeter of the tile. (CISCA)
- BURRED EDGE:** Slightly rounded edge of tile. Helps hide lipping caused by severe light (critical) shining over ceiling. (CISCA)
- CAP:** The rolled covering on the flange of a T-Bar. Some T-Bars come with an aluminum cap. (CISCA)
- CARRYING CHANNEL:** See "Main runner" (1-1/2" channel). (CISCA)
- CENTER LINE:** A line indicating the midpoint of a ceiling in either direction. Used as a guide in starting a ceiling. Always look for centerline in reflected ceiling plan or blueprints as guide on where to start installation of ceiling. (CISCA)

CENTER SCORE: A groove in a 12"x24" acoustical tile to simulate a 12"x12" tile. (CISCA)

CHALK LINE: A string or fine line coated with chalk and used to mark the height of the moulding. The line is held with each end close to the wall and then snapped against the wall. (CISCA)

CHANNEL: 1-1/2" U-shaped metal member approximately 16' long hung with wire or strap from the structural to support metal furring bars in an acoustical ceiling. (Normal spacing is 4'-0" o.c.) This channel is also referred to as main runner or carrying channel. (CISCA)

CLIP:

Border Spring: A small steel clip in a Z or H-Bar ceiling that fits between the acoustical tile border cut and the wall moulding to keep the cut tile from shifting.

End Lock: A 2-piece flat metal clip 24" long x 1" wide, used to support the ends of gypsum backer board that do not fall on a nailing channel.

Fixture: A scissors-type clip with threaded bolt that can be fastened to a main T in a grid system to support a surface-mounted light.

H-Bar: Clip used to fasten H-Bar to 1-1/2" channel.

Hold-down: A U-shaped piece of metal fastened over the tee above a lay-in panel to hold the panel in place against uplift caused by drafts.

Intersection: A metal piece used on some grid systems to fasten cross tees to main tees.

T-Bar: Clip used to fasten T-Bar to 1-1/2" channel.

Z-Bar: Clip used to fasten Z-Bar to 1-1/2" channel. (CISCA)

CONCEALED GRID: A direct-hung grid where the T fits into the kerf of the acoustical tile and all parts are concealed. The system is held together with cross-T splines and spacer bars. (CISCA)

CONCRETE NAIL: A short hardened nail used to fasten moulding to concrete. (CISCA)

CORNER CAP: Factory-formed miter that fits over the exterior of interior corners of metal mouldings. (CISCA)

COUPLING: See "spline". (CISCA)

CUT NAIL: Triangular hardened steel nail used to fasten moulding to a masonry wall. (CISCA)

DIFFUSER: A circular or rectangular metal grille recessed in a ceiling for the passage of air from a ducted system. (Flange on

diffuser covers edge of ceiling material). See also "linear air diffuser." (CISCA)

DRY LINE: A string line suspended from two points and used as a guide in installing an acoustical ceiling. (CISCA)

EGG-CRATE LOUVER: A polystyrene, acrylic or metal open cell grid panel to permit the circulation of air or the transmission of light from above the ceiling. (CISCA)

FIRE-CODE BACKER-BOARD: A gypsum backer-board with a one-hour fire rating. Class A or Class 25 Acoustical tile may be cemented to this backer-board and still achieve one-hour rating. (CISCA)

FLANGE: The horizontal exposed face of a T-Bar. (CISCA)

FLEXIBLE MOULDING: A plastic or metal moulding with a plastic face that can be applied to circular columns or curved surfaces. (CISCA)

FRACTURE: A type of failure of the cement in a cemented ceiling caused by improper installation of the acoustical tile. (CISCA)

FURRED CEILING: See "attached ceiling" (CISCA)

GRID CEILING: An exposed grid ceiling is a direct-hung suspension system, that is, the runners hang directly from the hangers or ceiling. It uses main and cross tees with drop-in acoustical tile panels. Standard sizes are 2'x4' and 2'x2'. It is also referred to as lay-in ceiling or tee-bar ceiling. (CISCA)

HANGERS: Metal straps, rods or wires used to support a suspended ceiling system from the structure. (CISCA)

HIGH DENSITY TILE: Acoustical tile with good attenuation and low sound absorption. A mineral tile is an example of high density. (CISCA)

HI-HAT FIXTURE: A small circular recessed light from 6" to 12" deep sometimes called a can fixture because it resembles a tin can. Larger Hi-Hats may cause additional field labor for acoustical contractor. (CISCA)

INSERT: A type of fastener installed in concrete or support structure that is used to support hangers. There are many different types. For example, screw eyes drilled to wood joists, expansion sleeves set in a predrilled hole in concrete, T-shape anchors, powder-driven studs with small eyelets, or butterfly type nailed to the concrete forms. (CISCA)

- KERF:** A groove cut out of the edges of tiles. This kerf permits the tile to be inserted onto the flange of various types of metal furring or leveling splines. (CISCA)
- LATH NAIL:** A small blue nail used to fasten gypsum board to wood furring. (CISCA)
- LAY-IN PANEL:** See "Acoustical Ceiling Board". (CISCA)
- LEVELING SPLINE:** A 3" fiber strip inserted into the kerf at the intersection of four cemented tile. (CISCA)
- LINEAR AIR DIFFUSER:** An air diffusing bar attached to air duct for distribution of air. It is not normally attached to the ceiling system. It is similar to an air bar system. (CISCA)
- LOW DENSITY TILE:** Acoustical tile with poor attenuation and high sound absorption. It is made of glass fibers or rock wool. (CISCA)
- MAIN RUNNER:** 1-1/2" channel. Carrying channel. (CISCA)
- METAL FURRING:** A light gauge framework of strips fastened to 1-1/2" channels, or bar joist. There are various shapes, for example H-shape, Z-shape and T-shape. Acoustical tile may be nailed or screwed to furring. (CISCA)
- METAL PAN:** Normally at 12"x24" steel or aluminum acoustical ceiling panel that snaps in a special spring locking tee bar. (CISCA)
- METAL PAN HOLD DOWN SPACER:** A light gauge channel that fits between a metal pan border cut and the moulding to force the pan to lay flat on the moulding. (CISCA)
- MITER:** To neatly cut two pieces of moulding to match or fit together at an interior or exterior corner, (at a miter joint). (CISCA)
- MITER MOULDING:** A moulding used at the intersection of a vertical acoustical ceiling break and the acoustical ceiling. (CISCA)
- MONEL WIRE:** Noncorrosive wire used in wet areas for hangers. (CISCA)
- MOULDING:** A light gauge metal angle or channel fastened to the wall or partition to support the perimeter of an acoustical tile ceiling. (CISCA)
- NAILING CHANNEL:** A metal furring bar shaped to receive annular nails and gypsum board. (CISCA)
- NONBREATHING SPLINE:** A fiber or metal strip inserted into the kerf of a tile to eliminate the passage of air through the joint between two tile in a Z-Bar or H and T system. (CISCA)
- PENDANT LIGHT FIXTURE:** A light fixture hung from the ceiling on a long stem or chain. (CISCA)
- PENETRATION:** An opening that extends through the basic material; for example, sprinklers, pipes, ducts, conduit, hoods, vents, recessed lights and grilles. (CISCA)
- PLENUM:** The space above a suspended ceiling; it is sometimes used as a chamber to hold cold or hot air to be diffused through small openings in the ceiling. (CISCA)
- PLENUM BARRIER:** Vertical surface framed from the structure above to the finished ceiling and sealed to prevent the passage of air. Taped gypsum board and plaster on furring, lead sheet, or Airsonite are typical materials used for constructing plenum barrier. (CISCA)
- POP RIVET:** A small gauge metal used to fasten T-Bars to moulding or to fasten any two light gauge metal pieces together. The rivets are installed with a hand-operated plier-type tool called a pop rivet gun through a predrilled hole. (CISCA)
- PRIMER:** A thin paint or glue size material sprayed or rolled onto concrete to insure that the cemented acoustical tile will properly hold or bond to the concrete. (CISCA)
- PUNCHING:** The spacing of the holes on the main tee to receive a cross tee in a grid system. (CISCA)
- RECESSED TROFFER LIGHT:** A light fixture recessed into the ceiling displacing acoustical tile and normally requiring additional framing. (CISCA)
- RESILIENT HANGER:** A type of hanger with rubber or fiberglass insulator insuring no metal-to-metal contact. It affords maximum protection against sound transmission. This is also called a sound isolation hanger. (CISCA)
- SCRIBE:** To cut and fit acoustical tile neatly to a wall or vertical surface. (CISCA)
- SHADOW MOULDING:** A Z-shaped moulding that will produce a reveal or space between the ceiling and the wall when fastened to the wall. Often used at irregular wall surfaces. (CISCA)
- SIZE:** A material used for filling pores in plaster or concrete to produce a smoother surface. (CISCA)
- SLIP MOULDING:** A light gauge channel used to cover the exposed edge of cemented acoustical tile panels. (CISCA)

- SOUND BARRIER:** A material installed in a plenum or partition to prevent the passage of sound from one area to another. Sound deadening board, lead sheet or special foil insulation make good sound barriers. (CISCA)
- SOUND ABSORBING PAD:** 12"x24", 12"x12", or 12"x36" insulation batting with polyethylene or paper wrapping for seating in a metal pan ceiling to provide increased sound absorption efficiency for the ceiling. The normal size is 12"x24". (CISCA)
- SOUND ISOLATION HANGER:** See "resilient hanger". (CISCA)
- SPACE UNIT:** A special size acoustical block fastened to wall or ceiling surfaces in various patterns for sound absorption. (CISCA)
- SPLAYED HANGERS:** Hanger hung at an angle rather than perpendicular to support grid or 1-1/2" channel. (CISCA)
- SPLICES:** Small metal pieces used to fasten two furring bars together such as Z, H and T-Bars or nailing channels. (CISCA)
- SPLIT LINE:** The elevation of the bottom of the 1-1/2" channel in a suspended acoustical ceiling other than grid. (CISCA)
- SQUARE EDGE:** An acoustical tile is considered square edge material when the edge of a tile from face to back is perfectly straight or perpendicular to the plan of the face. Creating a hair line joint when installed. (CISCA)
- SURFACE-MOUNTED LIGHT FIXTURE:** A light fixture fastened on the surface of an acoustical ceiling. (CISCA)
- SUSPENDED CEILING:** A ceiling that is hung from the structure with wire or strap hangers. (CISCA)
- T & G:** Stands for tongue - groove edge detail on acoustical tile or gypsum board. (CISCA)
- TAKE-OFF:** A quantity estimate of areas and footages measured from a drawing with a tape or architectural scale. (CISCA)
- TERMINAL BEAD:** A moulding used at the intersection of a vertical plaster surface and an acoustical tile ceiling to form an acoustical moulding and a plaster stop. (CISCA)
- 3/4" CHANNEL:** A lathers' light gauge metal channel shaped furring bar used to support metal lath - normally 16 feet long. (CISCA)
- TIE WIRE:** 16 or 18 gauge galvanized wire used to fasten two pieces of metal furring together. (CISCA)
- TRANSLUCENT:** A ceiling with polystyrene, acrylic or plastic lay-in panels which allows the light to pass through from fixtures above the ceiling but obstructs ordinary vision to the plenum above. (CISCA)
- U-CHANNEL:** A metal furring channel to which asbestos board is attached with screws. (CISCA)
- WATER LEVEL:** A hose with a glass pipe inserted in both ends used in leveling ceilings. (CISCA)
- WIRE GRID:** A wire spacer that holds the insulation pad in a metal pan ceiling away from the back surface of the pan. (CISCA)
- WEB:** The vertical dimension of a T-Bar. (CISCA)

- ABSORPTION COEFFICIENT:** See Sound Absorption. (CISCA)
- ACOUSTIC POWER:** The sound energy of a source emitted per second, measured in watts. (CISCA)
- Definite rate of sound energy is emitted (Sound Intensity). (CISCA)
- ACOUSTICAL CORRECTION:** The attainment of the best possible hearing conditions for wanted sound. (CISCA)
- ACOUSTICAL MATERIALS:** Materials which have high absorption coefficients. (CISCA)
- ACOUSTICALLY SATISFACTORY AUDITORIUM:** Optimum acoustic conditions in an auditorium are obtained when an average sound rises to a suitable intensity in every part of the auditorium with no echoes or distortion of the original sound, and then decays quickly enough not to interfere with succeeding sounds. This ideal is seldom reached, but the human ear allows a rather wide variation from ideal without damaging the overall effect. (CISCA)
- AIR BORNE TRANSMISSION:** Transmission of sounds which originate in the source rooms as sounds in the air. (CISCA)
- AMPLIFICATION:** The artificial strengthening of sound by mechanical means. (CISCA)
- AMPLITUDE:** Distance over which the air particles travel on each side of their neutral position. (CISCA)
- ATTENUATION:** In acoustics, the deleting or holding back of the energy of sound waves as they pass through a material. Materials are rated for their ability to prevent sounds from passing through them. (CISCA)
- ATTENUATION FACTOR:** The difference in noise level measured in decibels between a source room and an adjacent receiving room when it is assumed that all the sound entering the receiving room travels by way of the common ceiling of the two rooms. (CISCA)
- BINAURAL HEARING:** The reception of sounds through both ears. (CISCA)
- CEILING STC:** A single number rating of two-room ceiling sound attenuation. (CISCA)
- COMPLEX TONE:** A sound having two or more frequencies. (CISCA)
- CYCLE:** Each complete round trip of any vibrating body starting from its neutral position, moving to one side then to the other side and back to neutral. (CISCA)
- DEAD SPOTS:** In certain acoustically incorrect auditoriums, places where sound emitted on the stage is scarcely audible. (CISCA)
- DECIBEL:** Ten times the logarithm of the ratio of two sound intensities, energy densities or powers. (CISCA)
- Unit for measuring the ratio of any two amounts of acoustic power or sound intensity.
- DECIBEL REDUCTION:** A reduction in the intensity level expressed in decibels is commonly termed the decibel reduction. (CISCA)
- DIFFUSE SOUND:** Sound in an enclosure is diffuse when sound waves travel equally in all directions throughout the enclosure and the sound level varies minimally throughout the enclosure. (CISCA)
- DIFFRACTION:** The tendency of sound waves to flow readily around obstacles which are small in comparison to the wave length of the sound. (CISCA)
- ECHO:** A single reflection of sound which can be heard as distinct repetition of the original sound. (CISCA)
- EXCESSIVE REVERBERATION:** Long persistence of sound in a highly reflective room. (CISCA)
- FLOW RESISTANCE:** A measure of the ability of a material to impede the flow of air through it. (CISCA)
- FLANKING SOUND PATH:** A sound transmission path such as a structural path which bypasses a transmission barrier. (CISCA)
- FLUTTER:** A multiple echo set up between parallel reflecting surfaces. (CISCA)
- FREQUENCY:** The number of cycles occurring in one second. (CISCA)
- FREQUENCY SCALE:** The audible frequency scale extends from approximately 20 cycles per second to 20,000 cycles per second. In acoustical work the range from 100 to 7000 cycles per second is most important. The absorption of acoustical materials is measured at octave intervals between 125 and 4000 cycles per second. (CISCA)
- HERTZ:** The unit of frequency. One cycle per second is one hertz (Hz). (CISCA)
- IMPACT TRANSMISSION:** When a wall or floor is set into vibration by direct mechanical impact, and the sound is transferred through that wall or floor into another area. (CISCA)
- INTENSITY:** The amount of sound energy per second that is carried across a unit area. (CISCA)
- A measure of the amount of energy contained in the vibrating air particles, or the strength of sound at an observer's ear.
- INTENSITY LEVEL:** Expressed in decibels is ten times the logarithm of the ratio of the intensity of a sound to a reference

- intensity. (I.L. = $10 \log_{10}$. The reference intensity I_0 is usually taken as 10^{-12} watts per square meter. (CISCA)
- INTERFERENCE:** The destructive or reinforcing action of two or more waves arriving at the same position simultaneously. (CISCA)
- The alternate doubling and cancellation of amplitude from point to point caused by two waves travelling in opposite directions, passing through each other.
- LOUDNESS LEVEL:** The intensity level of a sound of 1,000 Hz frequency which sound equally as loud as the sound being considered. (CISCA)
- LOUD SPOTS:** Places in a room where sound focuses and increases the intensity level. (CISCA)
- MULTIPLE ECHO (FLUTTER):** One in which several repetitions of the original sound can be heard in more or less rapid succession. (CISCA)
- NOISE:** Unwanted sound. (CISCA)
- NOISE ISOLATION CLASS (NIC):** A single-number rating of noise reduction. (CISCA)
- NOISE LEVEL:** Intensity of noise when measured in decibels. (CISCA)
- NOISE QUIETING:** The reduction of sound intensity, through the use of absorptive material, to a level permitting comfortable working conditions. (CISCA)
- NOISE REDUCTION:** The difference in noise level measured in decibels between a source room and a receiving room. (CISCA)
- NOISE REDUCTION COEFFICIENT (NRC):** The average sound absorption coefficient to the nearest .05 measured at the four frequencies 250, 500, 1000 and 2000 Hz. (CISCA)
- NORMALIZED ATTENUATION FACTOR:** An attenuation factor corrected to receiving room total absorption of 126 sabins. (Cf. Attenuation Factor.) (CISCA)
- OCTAVE:** The interval between any two sounds having a frequency ratio of two to one. Example - 128, 1st octave 256, 2nd 512. (CISCA)
- OPEN PLAN OFFICE:** An office in which acoustical screens are used in place of ceiling--high partitions, and in which office layout is partially dictated by planning considerations. (CISCA)
- OPTIMUM TIME OF REVERBERATION:** The reverberation time which will give the best acoustical conditions for the intended use of the room. (CISCA)
- PHON:** Unit of loudness level. (CISCA)
- PITCH:** The auditory sensation which enables one to locate a sound on a scale from low to high. The higher the frequency the higher the pitch. (CISCA)
- Psychological sensation of sound created by intensity and frequency. High frequencies create high pitched sounds and conversely.
- POROSITY:** The ratio of the volume of an acoustical tile's pores to its solid content. Acoustical tile owe their sound absorptive values to the fact that they are highly porous. (CISCA)
- PURE TONE:** A sound having only a single frequency. (CISCA)
- REFLECTION:** Changing the direction of travel of a sound wave. (CISCA)
- REFLECTION COEFFICIENT:** The fraction of sound energy returned into a room after a sound wave strikes a surface in the room. The fraction not returned to the room is the absorption coefficient. (CISCA)
- REVERBERATION:** The prolongation of sound in a room by multiple reflections. (CISCA)
- Prolongation of sound after the source is stopped.
- REVERBERATION METHOD:** A method of determining the sound absorption of a space by the direct measurement of reverberation times. (CISCA)
- REVERBERATION TIME:** The time required for any average sound to reduce in intensity to a value one-millionth of its original intensity, or to reduce sixty decibels, after the sound source has stopped. (CISCA)
- SABIN:** One square foot of a surface having perfect absorption, an absorption coefficient of 1.00. (CISCA)
- SABINE FORMULA:** Relates room volume and total acoustical absorption to reverberation time:
- $$T = .05V/A$$
- (T - Reverberation time in sec.
V - Room volume in cu. ft.
A - Total absorption in sabins) (CISCA)
- SOUND:** A wave motion in the air set up by any vibrating body. (CISCA)
- SOUND ABSORPTION COEFFICIENT:** The fraction of the instant energy absorbed (not reflected by a material when a sound wave strikes it is called the sound absorption coefficient of that material). (CISCA)
- SOUND ABSORPTION UNIT:** See Sabin: (CISCA)
- SOUND INSULATION:** See sound transmission control. (CISCA)

SOUND LEAKS: Cracks under doors, openings in a wall, pipe or wiring holes, etc., which allow sound to escape through a structure from one room to another. (CISCA)

SOUND LEVEL METER: An electronic device which measures the decibel level of sounds. (CISCA)

SOUND TRANSMISSION: See Sound Transmission Control.

SOUND TRANSMISSION CLASS (STC): A single-number rating of its sound barrier efficiency. A two-room STC is the same as a ceiling STC. (Cf. Ceiling STC). (CISCA)

SOUND TRANSMISSION CONTROL: The use of sound insulation (i.e., barriers) or other means to reduce the level of sound transmitted from one location to another. (Cf. Air Borne Transmission and Structure Borne Transmission.) (CISCA)

SOUND WAVE: A pressure disturbance in air proceeding at a finite velocity (approximately 1120 ft./sec.) (CISCA)

SPEED OF SOUND: 1,120 ft. per second or 763 miles per hour is the speed of sound in air under standard conditions of temperature and pressure. (CISCA)

STANDARD MOUNTING: Acoustical ceiling board or tile are usually tested in standard mountings which simulate common installation conditions: e.g., #1, direct application as with glue; #2 on furring, #7, on a simulated suspension system. (CISCA)

STEADY STATE: The rapid build-up of sound intensity at each point in a room due to the accumulation of reflected waves reaching a steady value which does not change as long as the source continues. (CISCA)

STRUCTURE BORNE TRANSMISSION: Transmission of sounds which originate in the source room as sounds in the building structure is termed structure borne. (Cf. Air Borne Transmission). (CISCA)

THRESHOLD OF AUDIBILITY: Intensity level of the faintest sound the ear can hear. (CISCA)

THRESHOLD OF FEELING: Intensity level at which a sound is so loud as to begin to cause pain to the normal ear. This is approximately at 130 decibels. (CISCA)

TRANSMISSION: Transfer of sound through walls, floors and ceilings. (CISCA)

TRANSMISSION LOSS: The sound insulating efficiency for airborne sound of a wall or floor construction - or the number of decibels which a sound loses in being transmitted through a wall, floor or ceiling. (CISCA)

The difference (in decibels) between the level of sound power incident on the barrier from the source room and the level of sound power radiated directly into the receiving room.

TWO-ROOM ATTENUATION FACTOR: See Attenuation Factor and Ceiling STC. (CISCA)

WAVE LENGTH: The distance a wave travels in one cycle. It is approximately equal to the speed of sound (1,120 ft. per second in air) divided by the frequency. (CISCA)

- BACK:** The side opposite to the face of a laminated hardwood block. (ANSI)
- BARK POCKET:** Comparatively small area of bark around which normal wood has grown. (ANSI)
- BRASHNESS:** Condition of wood characterized by low resistance to shock and by abrupt failure across the grain without splintering. (ANSI)
- BURL:** A swirl or twist in the grain of the wood which usually occurs near a knot or crotch but does not contain a knot. (ANSI)
- CHECKS:** Small splits running parallel to grain of wood, caused chiefly by strains produced in seasoning. (ANSI)
- CROSS BREAK:** Separation of the wood cells across the grain. Such breaks may be due to internal strains resulting from unequal longitudinal shrinkage or to external forces. (ANSI)
- DECAY:** The decomposition of wood substance by fungi. The incipient stage is characterized by discoloration and may be accompanied by a softening of the wood substance. The final or ultimate state is characterized by the partial or complete collapse of the wood structure and the destruction of the wood substance. (ANSI)
- DELAMINATION:** Separation of plies or layers of wood or other material through failure of the adhesive bond. (ANSI)
- DISCOLORATIONS:** Stains in wood substances. Common veneer stains are sap stains, blue stains, stain produced by chemical action caused by the iron in the cutting knife coming in contact with the tannic acid of the wood, and those resulting from the chemical action of the glue. (ANSI)
- DOZE:** A form of incipient decay characterized by a dull and lifeless appearance of the wood, accompanied by a lack of strength and softening of the wood substance. (ANSI)
- FACE:** The side of any laminated hardwood block that is exposed to view after installation. (ANSI)
- GAP:** Open slits in the inner plies or improperly joined veneers. (ANSI)
- GRAIN:** The direction, size, arrangement and appearance of the fibers in wood or veneer. (ANSI)
- GUM POCKETS:** Well-defined openings between rings of annual growth, containing gum or evidence of prior gum accumulations. (ANSI)
- GUM SPOTS:** Gum or resinous material or color spots caused by prior resin accumulations. Gum spots can often be removed by sanding. (ANSI)
- HARDWOOD:** General term used to designate lumber or veneer produced from broad-leafed or deciduous trees in contrast to softwood, which is produced from evergreen or coniferous trees. (ANSI)
- HEARTWOOD:** The nonactive center of a tree generally distinguishable from the outer portion (sapwood) by its darker color. (ANSI)
- JOINT:** The line between the edges or ends of two adjacent sheets of veneer or strips of lumber in the same plane. (ANSI)
- JOINT, OPEN:** Joint in which two adjacent pieces of veneer do not fit tightly together. (ANSI)
- KNOT:** Cross section of tree branch or limb with grain usually running at right angles to that of the piece of wood in which it occurs. (ANSI)
- KNOTHOLES:** Opening produced when knots drop from the wood in which they were originally embedded. (ANSI)
- KNOT, PIN:** Sound knots less than 1/4 inch in diameter. (ANSI)
- KNOT, SOUND, TIGHT:** Knots that are solid across their face and fixed by growth to retain their place. (ANSI)
- LAP:** A condition where one piece of veneer in the same ply overlaps an adjacent piece. (ANSI)
- PARQUET FLOORING:** Mosaic hardwood slat flooring or unit block flooring installed in a pattern. (CSI)
- PATCHES:** Insertions of filler material or sound wood plugs or shims placed and glued into veneers or panels from which defective portions have been removed. (ANSI)
- PATTERN:** The configuration make up for each individual flooring unit or the pattern produced in the overall floor area. Individual flooring units patterns are of the following basic types:
- Basket Weave:** Rectangular wood strips of equal size, interwoven to produce the equal sides of the flooring unit.
- Diamond:** Individual wood strips are at 45° diagonals to the equal sides of the flooring unit. Four individual units produce the diamond shape.
- End to End:** Rectangular wood strips installed with grain running in one direction and usually with all end joints in line.
- Finger:** Rectangular wood strips forming 5 fingers which will produce an equal size block, and when placed in a checkerboard pattern.

- Herringbone:** Rectangular wood strips slanted and alternated row by row to form the wood block unit. Flooring unit will not be square but will lace together when installed. (CSI)
- PLASTIC IMPREGNATED HARDWOOD BLOCK FLOORING:** A relatively new product of hardwood with resin throughout the pore structure creating a composite product with improved characteristics, such as abrasion resistance, built-in finish and dimensional stability over ordinary wood. (CSI)
- PLY:** A single sheet of veneer, or several pieces laid with adjoining edges, which form one layer in a piece of laminated block flooring. (ANSI)
- ROUGH CUT:** Irregular shaped areas of generally uneven corrugation on the surface of veneer, differing from the surrounding smooth veneer and occurring as the veneer is cut by the lathe or slicer. (ANSI)
- SAPWOOD:** The living wood of lighter color occurring in the outer portion of a tree. Sometimes referred to as "sap". (ANSI)
- SHAKE:** A separation along the grain of wood in which the greater part occurs between the rings of annual growth. (ANSI)
- SHARP CONTRASTS:** For purposes of this Standard, this term means that face veneer of lighter than average color should not be joined at the edges with veneer of darker than average color and that two adjacent pieces of veneer should not be widely dissimilar in grain, figure and other natural character markings. (ANSI)
- SLAT PARQUET FLOORING:** Rectangular pieces of hardwood strip flooring in short lengths (usually all the same) laid in a pattern such as herringbone or end to end. (CSI)
- SMOOTH, TIGHT CUT:** Veneer carefully cut to minimize lathe checks. (ANSI)
- SOFTWOOD:** General term used to describe lumber or veneer produced from needle and/or cone-bearing trees. (See "Hardwood"). (ANSI)
- SOLID UNIT BLOCKS:** Modular blocks composed of solid hardwood flooring strips bound together by glue or steel splines embedded in the back. (CSI)
- SPECIES:** A distinct kind of wood. (ANSI)
- SPECIFIC GRAVITY:** The ratio of the weight of a certain volume of a substance to the weight of an equal volume of water, the temperature of which is 39.2°F (4°C). (ANSI)
- SPLITS:** Separations of wood fiber running parallel to the grain. (ANSI)
- SQUARE:** Rectangular wood strips of equal size will form a frame which is the actual square flooring unit. (CSI)
- STREAKS, MINERAL:** Natural discoloration of the wood substance. (ANSI)
- SWIRL:** Rectangular wood strips of equal size form an exterior frame for the size of the unit desired and the interior is filled with smaller rectangular strips. (CSI)
- TWISTING:** Warping in which one corner of a product which is normally flat twists out of the plane of the other three. (ANSI)
- UNIT WOOD BLOCKS:** Laminated plywood block flooring usually with one piece of wood as the finished surface. (CSI)
- VENEER:** A thin sheet of wood, rotary cut sliced or sawed from a lug, bolt or flitch. Veneer may be referred to as a ply when assembled into a block. (ANSI)
- WARPING:** Any distortion of a piece of wood from its true plane that may occur in seasoning. (ANSI)
- WOOD FILLER:** An aggregate of resin and strands, shreds, or flour of wood which is used to fill openings in wood and provide a smooth, durable surface. (ANSI)

FLOOR BRICK, INDUSTRIAL: Brick units for surfacing industrial floors subjected to abrasion, chemical attack, thermal and mechanical shock. (ASTM)

PAVING BRICK, PEDESTRIAN and LIGHT TRAFFIC: Brick units for surfacing such areas as patios, walkways, floors, plazas and driveways to support pedestrian and light vehicular traffic. (ASTM)

For other terms relating to this Section, see appropriate sections in Division 4.

ABOVE GRADE: A suspended floor with complete ventilation below, located above ground level. Moisture is seldom a problem with above grade floors. (MFC-HL)

ABOVE-GRADE SUBFLOORS: Floors above ground level. Normally an air space of at least 18" between the ground and the subfloor, with proper cross ventilation in both directions, should be provided to help assure dryness. (IS)

ABRASION: A form of wear, in which a gradual removal of a flooring surface is caused by the frictional action of relatively fine hard particles. (ASTM)

ABRASION RESISTANCE: Determined by one of several tests, this shows degree to which the floor withstands foot traffic and daily wear. (IS)

ABRASION TESTS: Performed in several ways:
 (1) Sandpaper moving continuously over the surface of the floor-covering; (2) Walking wheel, which simulates walking feet; (3) Sand dropped on the surface of the floor covering under a revolving disc. There is no Government procedure established for running this test. (MFC-HL)

ADHESIVES: Used to bond floor covering to the subfloor. The grade level, type of subfloor and type of backing on the floor covering determine the type of adhesive required. The popular adhesives used are: Linoleum Paste (white and tan); Latex Adhesives (white); Asphalt (black). (MFC-HL)

ADHESIVE MATERIALS: Adhesives designed for application of resilient floor covering are being developed as rapidly as the flooring materials. The specifier should consult with the flooring manufacturer's recommendations pertaining to adhesives, but a general knowledge of the most common types may also be helpful. (CSI)

Linoleum Paste: Linoleum pastes are water-base emulsions of sulfite-liquor, designed for installation of linoleum, rubber tile, some vinyls, cork tile, lining felt and some other materials. Being water-base emulsions which remain water soluble, they are unsuitable for application on grade slabs or suspended slabs not thoroughly dry, or in applications where spillage or dampness may be expected. (CSI)

Asphaltic Adhesives: There are 2 types in general use, emulsion and cut-back. Both are suitable for installing asphalt or vinyl-asbestos tile. Although they eventually become hard, asphaltic adhesives will remain soft and tacky for a long period of time. Because asphalt and vinyl-asbestos tile are relatively rigid with a high-degree of cold flow, they require adhesives with long tack retentions to insure contact. (CSI)

(A) Emulsion type: Emulsion-type adhesives are water-base emulsion con-

taining from 50 to 60 percent asphalt with no flammability or toxicity hazards. (CSI)

(B) Cut-back: Cut-back adhesives are solutions of asphalt in hydrocarbon solvents. (CSI)

Brushable Adhesives: Brushable adhesives are higher viscosity adhesives which can be applied with brushes, rollers or by trowel. (CSI)

Resinous, Waterproof Adhesives: Resinous, waterproof adhesives generally contain alcohol as a solvent and have approximately the same application characteristics as linoleum paste. Although dried films are insoluble in ordinary water, they are likely to be attacked by alkaline solutions, which makes them unsuitable for use over concrete surfaces on or below grade. (CSI)

Latex Adhesives: Procedures vary for using latex adhesive, but in general, tile may be installed in a wet film up to 10 minutes after application of the adhesive. Tile should be rolled to insure good contact. These adhesives have excellent resistance to water and remarkable adhesion for wet concrete. (CSI)

Epoxy Adhesives: Epoxy adhesives permit the installation of resilient flooring on concrete in contact with the earth below grade; provided that there is no hydrostatic pressure. The adhesives may also be used for vinyl over existing resilient floor surfaces. The adhesive sets hard and tight after tile is installed through catalytic action and does not depend upon air-drying. Generally, adhesive is supplied as 2-part material and must be carefully and thoroughly mixed and applied in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Before adhesive hardens, spots can be cleaned from tile and tools with alcohol on a cloth. (CSI)

AFTER SOFTENING: This does not occur with vinyl floorings. It did occur with long time aging of linoleum and was known as saponification. (MFC-HL)

AIR BUBBLES: Trapped air under floor covering. Bubbles may range from silver dollar size to very large areas. Generally caused by improper rolling, irregular subfloor, pre-set adhesive or subfloor contamination. (MFC-HL)

ALKALINE MOISTURE: Water carrying diluted alkaline salts. Excessive amounts can be very destructive to adhesive bond and floor coverings. (MFC-HL)

ALKALINE SALTS: Alkaline salts exist in cement, sand and subsoil. The salts are carried through the concrete subfloor by moisture. Where moisture penetration is excessive, large quantities of alkaline

- salt are brought to the surface of the slab, breaking down adhesive, finding its way through seams and tile joints. As moisture dries, a white salt deposit remains. (MFC-HL)
- ASBESTOS FIBERS:** A mineral used in the manufacture of vinyl asbestos (VA) tile and backing for sheet vinyl floorings. Will not deteriorate with moisture. (MFC-HL)
- ASBESTOS FELT BACKING:** An asbestos fiber felt, light grey or white in color. Used as a backing or carrying agent for most vinyl floor coverings. Since moisture does not deteriorate this type of felt, its development made possible the installation of vinyl floor coverings on or below grade, in direct application to concrete subfloors. (MFC-HL)
- ASPHALT TILE:** Asphalt tile is a composition of asphaltic and/or resinous thermoplastic binder, asbestos fibers, pigments and fillers, formed under heat and pressure and then cut to size. Asphalt tile is extremely moisture resistant; special formulations are available in grease-resistant grades, but are limited. (CSI)
- ASPHALTIC UNDERLAYMENT:** An asphalt compound of emulsion, sand and Portland Cement mixed with water to form a trowelable fill. Generally used for deep filling, since this mixture does not trowel to a feather edge. For deeper application, fine gravel may be added. Nonaggregate mix must be used for top finish. (MFC-HL)
- A.S.T.M.E.-84:** Steiner Tunnel Test (see Flame Spread Rating - A.S.T.M.E.-84). (MFC-HL)
- BACKED VINYL:** Backed vinyl consists of properly compounded vinyl resin stack bonded to scrap vinyl, rubber, or other nonvinyl backing. Standard sheet materials are composed of vinyl resin wearing surface with a backing of asbestos-flex felt or resin-saturated rag fiber. (CSI)
- BACKING:** May be of rag felt, asbestos felt or foam. Originally used on resilient flooring as a carrying agent during manufacture. Today's backings also provide resilience, moisture barrier, dimensional stability and insulation. Many have high sound deadening qualities. (MFC-HL)
- BASES:** Floor bases are strip materials of rubber or vinyl designed for the transition between vertical and horizontal surfaces and come in 2 types; cove and straight or flat (carpet). The "flash cove and base" is a 1-piece base and border treatment usually of some material or flooring while "top-set" is designed for installation over flooring. Bases may be flat or shaped and extruded or molded. (CSI)
- BELOW GRADE:** Below outside ground level. Usually a concrete slab, basement area. Any portion of which is below ground level constitutes entire area as below grade. (MFC-HL)
- A floor which is located below the ground level, usually a concrete slab. Presence of moisture is automatically assumed; should be properly tested to determine the moisture level. Proper floor and installation procedure must be selected. (IS)
- BEVELED EDGING:** An applied ramp, fastened in place to taper edge of floor covering to lower level. Available in asphalt compound, vinyl compound, rubber or aluminum. (MFC-HL)
- BINDER BARS:** Made of metal, vinyl or rubber and used to finish off raw edges such as doorways or between two different types of floors. (IS)
- BOARD UNDERLAYMENTS:** Used for resurfacing rough or uneven stripwood subfloors, or as a finished subfloor over rough underfloor. Available in thicknesses from 1/4" to 5/8" in three product categories: Plywood; Hardboard (Underlayment, Grade) and Particleboard (Association Grade). (MFC-HL)
- BOND TEST:** A test to determine holding quality of resilient flooring to subfloor. Procedure: Use a piece of specified floor covering about one yard square, install with specified adhesive in several locations throughout area to be covered. Roll patches carefully and allow adhesive to dry thoroughly; usually one week to 10 days. When patches are removed, delamination of backing felt should occur, indicating subfloor is dry, free of hardening or curing compounds, oil or grease. (MFC-HL)
- BUFFING:** Usually accomplished with a power-driven polishing machine. Popular method of maintaining linoleum asphalt tile and VA tile. (MFC-HL)
- BUILT-IN CUSHIONING:** A vinyl foam core located between wear layer and backing felt, providing comfort under foot, quiet, warmth and elimination of most indentations. (MFC-HL)
- BUTTED:** Positioning edge to edge, such as butting tile or underlayment board. (MFC-HL)
- BURRED EDGES:** Most often caused by cutting seam with dull knife, leaving a jagged edge. Can be removed by aluminum foil and electric iron, scraping and sandpapering, rubbing with hammerhead or with scrap material. (IS)
- CAPPING:** Procedure and material used for self-coved tile and/or sheet goods installation. The cap strip, usually metal but also can be vinyl or rubber, has a flange into which the top edge of the coved floor covering fits. (IS)

CHAMBER TEST: Common reference to flame spread resistance testing. (MFC-HL)

CHEMICAL RESISTANCE: Ability to withstand staining or corrosive action of chemicals. Sheet vinyl floors resist the majority of household chemicals. (MFC-HL)

The degree to which the floor covering resists stains and/or corrosive action of various household and industrial chemicals. (IS)

CHIP-BOARD: A reference term for particle-board. (MFC-HL)

CHIP DESIGN: A small rounded or flake-shaped decorative particle. A popular decoration for calendered or moulded vinyl floor coverings, where small chips are inlaid into the wearlayer. (MFC-HL)

CLEAR VINYL SURFACE: A clear vinyl compound used as the tough, long wearing wearlayer for cushioned vinyl flooring and roto-printed floor covering. (MFC-HL)

COLOR PIGMENT: A dye used in producing decorative color particles for asphalt tile and vinyl asbestos tile, inlaid or moulded vinyl floor covering, and used to color the vinyl inks used to print cushioned vinyl floor covering. (MFC-HL)

COMMERCIAL: Floor coverings designed to be installed in schools, hospitals, public buildings or institutions. Commonly referred to as contract work. (MFC-HL)

CONDUCTIVE FLOORING: A floor designed to carry off built-up static electricity, reducing the possibility of explosion in hospital operating rooms, powder storage and loading plants. A spark proof floor available in linoleum, vinyl and troweled on floors. (MFC-HL)

CONCRETE PLANK SUBFLOOR: A reinforced precast concrete unit installed over supporting steel. Because of the joints between units a concrete or latex filltopping is required before resilient flooring can be installed. (MFC-HL)

CORK TILE: Composed of pure cork particles uniformly bonded by baking process and may contain thermosetting binders. Tile may be unfinished or finished with waxes, lacquers, resins or clear plastic films. (CSI)

COVE BASE: The curving of floor covering from floor up the wall usually four to six inches high, forming a sanitary curved surface at junction of floor and wall. (MFC-HL)

COVE STRIP: Used for flash cove installation, this is usually a 1/8" strip of muslin-backed wax. Installed at floor level so that floor covering can be curved up over it in forming the cove. (IS)

CROSS SEAM: A seam joining the ends of floor covering, one to another. A swirl or saw-toothed cut is best as it is less noticeable. (MFC-HL)

A procedure used to join two ends of the floor covering together. A cross seam should not be used in an area where another cross seam is used. Should attempt to use where they will be least objectionable. (IS)

CURING: An agent used with concrete subfloors to reduce evaporation rate of water and achieve a harder and denser finished slab. Note: Curing compounds can create bonding problems. Tests should be made prior to the installation. (IS)

CUSHION: A closed cell expanded vinyl used as a core or as a backing in cushioned vinyl floor coverings to provide comfort under foot, warmth, quiet and to resist indentations. (MFC-HL)

CUSHIONED VINYL FLOORING: Any of the vinyl sheet floor coverings in which a foam layer is incorporated as part of the product thickness. (ASTM)

DEPTH: A visual appearance measurement. Ability to look through clear wearlayer or chip. (MFC-HL)

DIMENSIONAL STABILITY: The characteristic of the floor covering to retain its original size without appreciable expansion or shrinkage in use. (MFC-HL)

DOUBLE-CUT: Also called full-lapped. Always used with nonpatterned goods. Can also be used on patterned goods with large-size blocks with sufficient selvage. Double-cutting is done by lapping the edges of the material (3/4") and striking a chalk line (3/8") from edge of top sheet, along entire length. A cut is then made on the chalk-line completely through the top sheet and deep enough to leave a guide for the cutting of the bottom sheet. (IS)

DROP MATCH: Refers to sheet goods where the pattern design matches at the midpoint of the design. For example, a half or 9" drop match means that there is an 18" match at the edge of the floor covering. As the design repeats across the floor, it drops one half match every second row (see Pattern Matching & Repeat). (IS)

DRYING CONDITIONS: The optimum for concrete and adhesives is low humidity and moderate temperature. Water must evaporate for concrete to harden and adhesives to set. Good air circulation is very important in concrete drying. (MFC-HL)

DYNAMIC LOAD RESISTANCE INDENTATION: The ability of flooring material to recover from momentary impact or time controlled static load. (MFC-HL)

- EDGING:** Made of metal, vinyl or rubber, it protects the floor covering's edge at doorways and/or other areas where raw edges are exposed. (IS)
- EMBOSSING:** To ornament with high and low surfaces. Produced mechanically or chemically. Has extreme value in concealment of subfloor irregularities and indentations. Prolongs gloss retention since only high point of embossing receives surface abrasion. (MFC-HL)
- END STOP:** A resilient base used for finishing the base run at flush openings. (CSI)
- EPOXY ADHESIVE:** A two-part adhesive that is mixed on the job. Has short working time. Used for special requirements. (MFC-HL)
- EXTERNAL CORNER:** A resilient base preformed for external corners. (CSI)
- FADING:** Prolonged exposure to ultra-violet rays of sunlight causes lightening or fading of color in linoleum floor covering. Vinyl floor covering resists fading to a higher degree. Reds, blues and greens will show slight fading under extreme ultra-violet light. (MFC-HL)
- FEATHER EDGE:** Procedure to reduce the gauge of the tile or thickness of sheet goods by tapering the edge in order to achieve level installation across width and length of floors. (IS)
- FEATURE STRIPS:** Contrasting strips or shapes of resilient flooring material used as borders or to delineate pattern for decorative or usage purposes (as in gymnasium or multi-purpose game situations). (CSI)
- FELT SCORER:** A rounded, pointed bradawl or ice pick used to crease felt lining at junction of floor and wall prior to cutting. (MFC-HL)
- FIBERGLASS REINFORCED VINYL:** Vinyl floor covering having an interlayer of fiberglass. Usually very light gauge fiberglass intended to maintain dimensional stability. (MFC-HL)
- FIELD:** The area of resilient flooring that is contained within the limits of the borders or walls. (CSI)
- FILL:** Procedure in subfloor preparation to level low spots, depressions, holes and the like to a level surface. Usually a trowelled-on product. (IS)
- FILLET STRIP:** A structural backing for a flash cove. (CSI)
- FINISH:** The appearance of the flooring with regard to gloss level, surface texture and embossing. (MFC-HL)
- FITTING:** That part of the tile or sheet goods installation where the floor covering is fitted to walls, doorways, around projections, etc. Methods most often used are pattern-scribed, or hand-fitted. (IS)
- FLAKEBOARD:** Another name for particle-board. Also referred to as chip-board. (MFC-HL)
- FLASH COVE and BASE:** A combined base and border which is coved at the junction of horizontal and vertical surfaces. (CSI)
- FLAME SPREAD RATING - A.S.T.M. E-84:** Established by use of the Steiner Tunnel Test--wherein the sample of flooring material is fastened to the ceiling of a long tunnel approximately 25 feet long by two feet wide and two feet high. A flame is drawn through the tunnel by forced draft and the rate of flame spread and charring measured to give a flame spread rating. (MFC-HL)
- FLEXIBILITY:** That property of a resilient flooring which allows it to be deformed by bending or rolling without cracking, breaking or showing other permanent defects. (ASTM)
- FOAM-CUSHIONED:** Floor covering that has a core of vinyl foam cushioning, a backing of rubber or vinyl foam. (MFC-HL)
- FOAMED VINYL BACKING:** A closed cell vinyl foam backed floor covering. The vinyl foam takes the place of usual asbestos felt and adds extreme comfort under foot, quietness and warmth. Should not be used over radiant heated floors due to its high insulating quality. (MFC-HL)
- FREE FORM:** A nonrectangular shape, a curved junction usually used to join different colored floorings, used to designate one area from another. (MFC-HL)
- GAUGE:** Is a reference to overall thickness. A general term for linoleum floor coverings, where overall gauges run from 1/16" to 1/4" in thickness. Vinyl floor coverings are gauged in overall thousandths of an inch. (MFC-HL)
- GOUGE:** A form of wear, consisting of a wide deformation accompanied by material removal and penetrating a considerable distance below the immediate flooring surface. (ASTM)
- GRADE:** Refers to the subfloor: above-grade, on-grade or below-grade (see specific categories). (IS)
- GRAINING:** The granular or fibrous appearance of asphalt tile or vinyl asbestos tile. The embossed striated effect used to simulate wood in vinyl floor coverings and tile. (MFC-HL)

- GREASE RESISTANCE:** The ability of the flooring to withstand the effects of grease. Special formulated asphalt tile, vinyl asbestos tile and vinyl floor coverings resist grease through the tile joints or flooring seams will destroy most adhesives. (MFC-HL)
- GRINDING:** The use of a concrete or terrazzo grinder to level subfloors, remove paint, surface films and hardening or curing compounds. (MFC-HL)
- HAND FITTING:** Installation in which instead of guidelines or scribe marks, the contour of the baseboard trim or other irregularities is used as the guide for the knife (i.e., fitting floor covering to the perimeter of the room). (IS)
- HARDBOARD:** Used as underlayment to resurface irregular wood subfloors. Special formulated underlayment quality is desirable as against a soft board which will indent, or a tempered board which, when nailed or stapled, will leave a protrusion in the surface of each fastening. (MFC-HL)
- HIGH-LOW:** A term used to indicate a difference between sheets of flooring at the seam. (MFC-HL)
- HOMOGENEOUS:** The floor covering industry uses this term rather loosely to indicate compatible vinyl formulations. (MFC-HL)
- HOMOGENEOUS VINYL:** A thoroughly blended composition of thermoplastic binders, fillers, and pigments; binder consists of a polyvinyl chloride or copolymer resin compounded with suitable plasticizers, stabilizers and coloring agents. Coloring agents must be insoluble in water and resistant to cleaning agents and to ultra-violet light. Homogeneous vinyl tile are a superior resilient flooring for application where appearance, high quality and wear-resistance are important. (CSI)
- HYDROSTATIC PRESSURE:** Takes place with on-grade or below-grade concrete slabs when either excessive water is present or there is a high water table. Pressure forces water through the slab, which can cause the job to fail. (IS)
- INSPECTION PROCEDURE:** When performed by the flooring contractor, it should include pre-installation inspection of job conditions, quality of subfloor, heat availability, light, delivery conditions and area free of other trades. During installation, inspection may reveal improper layout of material, fitting, seaming and poor workmanship. It is best corrected early in the installation. (MFC-HL)
- IMPACT INDENTATION:** Tests the degree to which the floor covering recovers from indentation created by dropped objects or foot traffic. (IS)
- IMPACT NOISE RATING:** Increasingly important with several large cities as well as FHA and HUD establishing minimum noise level standards for multiple housing. Test measures the noise that results from dropped objects, foot traffic and the like. (IS)
- INERT FILLER:** A filler without active properties, such as limestone. (MFC-HL)
- INLAID SHEET FLOORING:** A floor surfacing material in which the pattern is formed by colored areas that extend from the surface through to a backing, and that are bonded together and to the backing. (ASTM)
- INLAID VINYL:** A vinyl flooring having decorative chips or flakes through its entire thickness. (MFC-HL)
- INLAID VINYL WEARLAYER:** A wearlayer having clear-through decoration applied to a felt or scrap vinyl backing. (MFC-HL)
- INSETS:** Installing a design into the overall floor covering. Methods include: drawing directly on the floor and then cutting it out; making a template; using precut designs; drawing design on heavy paper backed with carbon paper and then tracing to transfer design for cutting out; mill-produced pieces to be fitted, etc. (IS)
- INSERT:** Custom or standard shape in contrasting color or pattern, set into the field of resilient floor covering for special purposes. (CSI)
- INTERNAL CORNER:** A resilient base preformed for internal corner application. (CSI)
- JOINTS:** The junction of tile units. Referred to as tile joints. The junction of underlayment board. A precut surface butted together. (MFC-HL)
- KNIFING:** Procedure in which a knife is used to gradually cut the floor covering to fit the room. (IS)
- LATEX:** A rubbery, milky liquid used in flooring and felt backing production. Used as the liquid vehicle when mixing latex fills. (MFC-HL)
- LATEX-TYPE UNDERLAYMENTS:** A mixture of latex and lumite cement. Trowelable to feather edge, extremely strong, will not crack or fracture under load. Should be used to repair on or below grade concrete subfloors. (MFC-HL)
- LIGHT REFLECTIVITY:** Defined as the percentage of total light falling on the surface of the flooring which is reflected back to the eye. It is not influenced by the nature of the surface, but is dependent on the color of the surface. Pure white has the highest reflective value. (MFC-HL)

LIGHT REFLECTANCE VALUES: The percentage of total light reflected back to the eye from the floor. Color of the floor covering surface is the influencing factor. Measured with a reflectometer, using standard light source. (IS)

LINING FELT: A roll-type 36-inch wide underlayment. Used to absorb stripwood floor expansion and contraction. Required under burlap backed linoleum and tile when installed over stripwood flooring. Three types are available: Dry felt; semisaturated felt and fully saturated felt. (MFC-HL)

LINOLEUM: Blended composition of cork or wood flour, oxidized oleo-resinous binders, pigments and fillers cured and backed with burlap or felt. Linoleum is a low to medium-priced resilient flooring excelling in resilience and quietness. (CSI)

LIQUID SOLVENT WAXES: A wax containing a solvent base, such as naphtha. Used for maintenance of vinyl asbestos tile and linoleum. Should not be used on asphalt tile. Waxes are not recommended for vinyl floor coverings. Vinyl dressings should be used for maintaining sheet vinyl floor coverings. (MFC-HL)

LOAD LIMIT: The maximum amount of static weight that can be placed on a resilient floor without permanent damage to the surface. (MFC-HL)

LOOSE-LAY: Floors installed without use of adhesive, generally rotovinyl products. Recommended procedures sometimes vary, so check manufacturer. Around perimeter floor covering is put beneath quarter round. Adhesive is used at seams, by adhering to heavy wrapping paper or shade cloth and not to floor. (IS)

MASTIC UNDERLAYMENTS: A mixture of asphalt emulsion, sand and cement to which some water is added to provide trowelability. Used for leveling large areas of concrete subfloors. Has poor structural strength and can crumble and break down under heavy traffic. (MFC-HL)

MATCH MARKS: A mark indicating the pattern repeat point, usually found in the selvage trim-off edge of sheet floor coverings. (MFC-HL)

MATTE SURFACE: A dull or sateen finish as opposed to high gloss finish. (MFC-HL)

MEDALLIONS: A decorative pattern or ornamentation used as a motif in floor covering design. (MFC-HL)

MEMBRANE VAPOR BARRIERS: Advisable in all on or below grade concrete subfloors. Properly installed, will effectively stop moisture penetration through the slab, placing it in the suspended slab category. Membranes are installed prior to pouring slab over a drainage pad or sandwiched between two layers of concrete. (MFC-HL)

MITRE: The junction of two pieces of flooring at an angle, usually at 45°. Used when installing border material, top set base or quarter round mouldings. (MFC-HL)

MODIFIED LOOSE-LAY: Similar to procedure for loose-lay, except that adhesive is used for cementing seams to floor and at doorways (see Loose-Lay). (IS)

MOISTURE TESTS: Prior to installing resilient floors over a concrete subfloor, the subfloor should be tested for dampness. Mill specs should be checked to be sure the floor is proper for the installation. Test methods are:

Chemical: A ring of caulking compound or putty 6" in diameter and 1/2" high is securely bonded on the concrete at each corner of the room and at the center. A small hole is drilled in the concrete inside each ring and granulated anhydrous calcium chloride is placed on a watch or clock crystal, covered with a piece of glass and pressed down on the putty. If there is dampness in the slab, moisture will appear on the cover glass in 48 to 72 hours and the calcium chloride will be all or partially dissolved. (IS)

Electrical: Works on principle of resistance to electricity passing through the moisture in the slab. To detect deep-seated moisture, holes must be drilled halfway through the slab with pins inserted in the holes. (IS)

Humidity Test: A relative humidity meter is placed on the surface of the concrete next to interior walls and pillars. The meter is covered with an 18" square polyethylene sheet, sealed at the edges with tape or cement. On a slab 4" thick, test should run 24 hrs. up to 72 hrs. on a thicker slab. If the meter reading stays at 80%, slab is too wet. (IS)

Mat Test: 24" squares of goods to be installed are placed at several points on the subfloor and installed with adhesive and let remain from 24 to 48 hrs. Remove patches. If beads of water are found on the subfloor, moisture is present. Test can also be performed using a water soluble adhesive. If adhesive fails to dry after 48 hrs., or if it is partly or completely dissolved, there is an abnormal amount of moisture in the slab. (IS)

Primer Test: Spread primer in several locations on the floor, including the corners. Scrape primer with a putty knife. If the primer peels off of the floor, moisture is rising to the surface of concrete too rapidly. (IS)

- MOLD GROWTH:** Occurs where wood or rag fiber felt, cotton or jute backed floor coverings are installed in contact with moisture, such as on or below grade concrete subfloors. Linoleum is susceptible when installed in such areas. (MFC-HL)
- MOSAICS:** A surface decoration accomplished by inlaying small pieces of various-colored square or rectangular chips to form a pattern, often used in moulded type vinyl floorings. (MFC-HL)
- NET SEAM:** A neat seam by this method results from the angle at which the knife blade is held. If the blade is held at a true 90° to the floor, a net seam results. Tilting the blade away from the edge will result in an open seam, toward the edge produces too tight of a seam. (IS)
- NO-BURR SEAM:** A seam free of jagged saw-toothed turn up. Can occur with moulded or calendered vinyl floorings when seam is cut with a dull knife. (MFC-HL)
- NO-WAX:** Flooring having a special formulated wear layer, which maintains gloss retention with a minimum of maintenance. (MFC-HL)
- OLEORESINOUS BINDERS:** A range of drying oils used in the production of linoleum floor coverings. (MFC-HL)
- OVER SCRIBING:** Use a divider or compass as a marking device. Trace a wall contour directly onto the floor covering. (MFC-HL)
- PARQUET FLOORS:** A mosaic of pieces of wood to form a pattern often simulated in cushioned sheet vinyl flooring and embossed vinyl asbestos tile. (MFC-HL)
- PARTICLEBOARD:** Used as an underlayment for floor covering. When properly processed can be successful as underlayment. Formulated of wood chips and flakes bonded with resins and binders under pressure to form a board-like sheet available in various thicknesses. (MFC-HL)
- PASTE WAX:** A semi-solid mixture of solvents and wax. Extensively used to maintain linoleum and asphaltic formulated tiles. (MFC-HL)
- PATTERN:** A design or ornamental figures that give the flooring its distinction and appearance. Also a term used to describe a method of fitting floor covering, using felt as a pattern, namely, pattern scribing. (MFC-HL)
- PATTERN MATCH:** That point at which the design unit repeats and matches. Pattern match in resilient floor covering may range from three to 36 inches with a few running as high as 54 inch repeat. (See Repeat). (MFC-HL)
- PATTERN SCRIBING:** An accurate and convenient procedure for fitting sheet goods (particularly in a small room). Consists of two operations (a) scribing the contour of vertical surfaces to lining felt or heavy wrapping paper and (b) transferring the pattern by rescribing the lines on the felt onto the floor covering being installed. (IS)
- PERIMETER INSTALLATION:** Procedure with approved sheet goods in which the floor is installed by using special adhesive system around the outer edges and at seams instead of spreading entire floor. (IS)
- PIGMENTS:** A dye substance finely pulverized used for coloring floor covering composition and inks used in the manufacture of cushioned vinyl floor coverings. (MFC-HL)
- PLAIN TILE:** Reference used to describe solid color tile or nonembossed tile. (MFC-HL)
- POLYMERIC FLOOR FINISHES:** A compound commonly known as vinyl dressing used as a floor finish for vinyl floor coverings. Should not be applied over an existing wax finish. (MFC-HL)
- POLYMERIC POURED (SEAMLESS) FLOORS:** A floor covering composed of polymeric material applied to the substrate in a liquid form alone, or in combination with mineral or plastic chips, pigments, desiccants, or fillers, which convert(s) to a thick built-up covering. (ASTM)
- POLYVINYL-ACETATE UNDERLAYMENTS:** Polyvinyl-acetate resins are the main ingredient of concrete bonding compounds for securing concrete topping to old concrete, terrazzo, marble, concrete block, brick, ceramic tile and painted or nonporous surfaces such as metal, or other materials providing no suction or absorption. They eliminate the costly, time-consuming practices of chipping, drilling, roughing, acid-washing or scari-fying old surfaces. (MFC-HL)
- PRINTED SHEET VINYL FLOORING:** A floor surface material in which the pattern is printed on a backing and protected with a wear layer of transparent or translucent vinyl plastic. (ASTM)
- REFLECTANCE VALUES:** Established by a reflectometer using a standard light source. Pure white is rated at 100; darker colors fall somewhere below that rating; Black is rated at zero. (MFC-HL)
- REDUCER:** An extruded resilient piece used for edge trim to protect exposed edge of floor covering at lines of demarcation with an exposed substrate of floor treatment of lesser thickness. (CSI)

REPEAT: Indicates the distance between identical design elements in sheet goods. The most widely used is an 18" repeat, with range from 3" to 54". Common are 9", 12", 13-1/2", 27" and 54" repeats (9" and 12" repeats usually found in small block or tile designs). (IS)

RESILIENT FLOORING: An organic floor surfacing material made in sheet or tile form or formed in place as a seamless material of which the wearing surface is nontextile. The resilient floor covering classification by common usage includes, but is not limited to asphalt, cork, linoleum, rubber, vinyl, vinyl asbestos, and polymeric poured seamless floors. Resilient in this sense is used as a commonly accepted term, but does not necessarily define a physical property. (ASTM)

RISERS: Vinyl or rubber used for covering the part of the step which forms the back, perpendicular to the tread. (IS)

ROLLING: Procedure for removing trapped air and properly setting the floor covering into the adhesive (linoleum roller). Also procedure for use on seams (seam roller). (IS)

ROTOGRAVURE: A printing technique encompassing large metal cylinders onto which the design or pattern has been etched. The design may be duplicated from photography or may be an artist's rendering. The printed surface of the floor covering is then protected with a clear vinyl wearlayer. Rotogravure printing of floor covering offers unlimited design and pattern opportunities. (MFC-HL)

ROTOVINYL: A printed sheet vinyl flooring in which the pattern is printed by a rotogravure process. (ASTM)

RUBBER FLOORING: Composed of rubber compounds of the synthetic butadiene-styrene type. Flooring is close to vinyls in quality, but slightly inferior in durability and in resistance to grease and alkalis. (CSI)

RUNNERS: Light gauge continuous length material used for pathway covering or stairs. (CSI)

SADDLE: An insert in resilient flooring at an interior opening; related to thresholds. (CSI)

SEALANT: A vinyl liquid compound used for sealing seams in vinyl floor covering. (MFC-HL)

SEALED SEAMS: A seam that has been sealed with an applicator, thereby welding the vinyl wearlayers together creating a virtually seamless appearance and eliminating soil and moisture penetration. (MFC-HL)

SEAMS: The joining of two edges of sheet floor covering accomplished with a knife by double cutting or underscriving. (MFC-HL)

SEAM CUTTER: An electrically powered or hand propelled holder containing a blade set to cut a net true edge. Usually this tool is guided by a straight edge. (MFC-HL)

SEAM SEALING: Procedure for welding seams of vinyl sheet goods, using special applicator and sealant. Properly applied, welds the wearlayers for appearance, elimination of soiled seams and elimination of moisture penetration. (IS)

SECONDS: Usually minor defects in product, such as off-shade, off-register and poor surface finish. May be two pieces to the roll--installable material with some inspection prior to installing. (MFC-HL)

SELVAGE: A strip down the edge of sheet goods, marked with codes for matching and pattern repeat data. Also selvages provide overlap for cutting seams. (IS)

SELVAGE EDGE: Widestrip surplus material usually carrying pattern repeat information. The selvage edge assists in providing sufficient overlap for cutting seams and cut away during seam cutting. (MFC-HL)

SERVICE GAUGE: A residential weight floor covering having an overall thickness of .065 to .070 thousandths. (MFC-HL)

SET MATCH: The pattern design matches straight across the sheet from edge to edge. A term used in connection with geometric patterned floor coverings. (MFC-HL)

SHADING: In filled, moulded or calendered floor covering, shading is caused by improper dispersion of decorative color. In rotoprinted vinyls, shading is caused by slight variance in pressure from one side to the other on printing cylinders. Shading may also occur between production runs of a given pattern. (MFC-HL)

SHEET FLOORING: Floor covering manufactured in six-, nine- and 12-foot widths as opposed to tile unit floors. Generally, a reference to adhesively applied floor covering. (MFC-HL)

SHEET-VINYL: Encompasses those floor coverings that are normally adhesively applied. The reference would apply to calendered, moulded and cushioned vinyl floor coverings in a variety of thicknesses and widths. (MFC-HL)

STAGGERED JOINTS: An offset joint pattern recommended for application of underlayment board. Avoids all joints running in a continuous straight line. (MFC-HL)

STATIC LOAD INDENTATION: The indents made by heavy equipment or furniture remaining in one position for long periods of time. Indents caused by

- refrigerators, stoves and other semi-permanent equipment, usually leave permanent indentations in floor covering. (MFC-HL)
 - STRAIGHTEDGED/SINGLE-LAPPED:** Procedure for cutting seams when there is not enough selvage on large block designs, or if small-scale designs or interliner patterns are used. Edge of one piece is squared by cutting it along a straightedge. This is then lapped over the edge of the adjoining seam, and with knife held against the squared edge, the under piece is scored. Scored piece is then trimmed along the length of the seam. (IS)
 - STATIC-CONDUCTIVE FLOORING:** Static-conductive flooring in tile and sheet material is available in vinyl, rubber and linoleum. Flooring material is a specially formulated mixture including carbon or similar conductive material as an integral part. (CSI)
 - STRINGER:** A continuous strip material performing the function of wall base as applied to stair work. (CSI)
 - STRIPPING:** The process of removing old wax and floor finishes after several applications which leave an undesirable build-up. (MFC-HL)
 - SUBFLOOR:** The floor supporting the floor covering. The subfloor may be of strip-wood, plywood, concrete, terrazzo, marble, ceramic tile or metal suitable prepared to receive the installation of resilient floor covering. (MFC-HL)
 - THERMOPLASTIC:** A formula that softens with heat and hardens with cold. Vinyl floor covering has this property. Lighted cigarettes left smouldering on vinyl floor covering can soften, melt and char the vinyl surface, and a surface depression often results. (MFC-HL)
 - THIN TOE PROFILE:** A long, flexible toe on vinyl or rubber top set base designed to give wide coverage and form to floor inequalities. (MFC-HL)
 - TREAD:** Vinyl or rubber material used for covering that part of the step which is walked on. (IS)
 - UNDERLAYMENT:** The application of a surfacing material over existing floors to smooth and level irregularities for the installation of floor covering. The extreme flexibility of floor covering materials tend to telegraph irregularities through the finished installation. (MFC-HL)
- Installed to cover subfloor irregularities and to absorb the movement of wood sub-floors. A variety of underlayments are used to smooth and level irregularities Hard-board, particleboard, plywood, mastic with

latex binders, mastic with asphalt binders, mastic with polyvinyl-acetate, etc. (IS)

- UNDERSCRIBE:** Procedure used for sheet goods seaming, fitting tightly to walls; for fitting tile, for fitting stair treads, etc. For example, when used for sheet goods seam an edge of one sheet of the floor covering is squared and a second piece laid so that the overlap is over the trimmed edge of the first piece. The edge of the top piece is inserted in the underscriber, and with the guide pressed against the square edge of the bottom piece, you score the top piece by drawing the underscriber along the edge of the bottom sheet. The needle trades the contour of the lower sheet edge, making a guide line for the knife. (IS)
- UNDERSCRIBING:** Accomplished with a tool having a lower nib which rides against the edge of the bottom sheet of flooring. The underscriber, shaped like a clothes pin, has a needle set directly above the back edge of the nib. When drawn down the sheet, the needle will trace the contour of the lower sheet edge, providing a scratch line as a guide for the knife. (MFC-HL)
- VINYL ASBESTOS TILE:** A floor surfacing unit composed of vinyl plastic binder, asbestos fibers, mineral fillers and pigments. The vinyl plastic binder is an essentially poly (vinyl chloride) resin or a poly (vinyl chloride) copolymer resin compounded with suitable plasticizers and stabilizers. (ASTM)
- VINYL COVE BASE:** A preformed vinyl base treatment with a radius toe. In heights of 1-1/2, 2, 4 and 6 inches. Applied to walls after installation of floor covering providing a sanitary decorative treatment. Properly installed, provides a surface moisture protection at junctions of floor and walls. (MFC-HL)
- VINYL FOAM:** An expanded vinyl forming a cellular resilient layer. Used as a core or backing for cushioned vinyl floors. (MFC-HL)
- VINYL PLASTIC RESINS:** A compound of vinyl chloride. (MFC-HL)
- WATER BASED ADDITIVES:** Most adhesives used today are water based--linoleum paste, latex adhesives and asphalt emulsion. Cut back and a few special adhesives use solvent as a carrying agent. Solvent base adhesives should not be used under floor covering unless specified by the floor covering manufacturer. (MFC-HL)
- WATERPROOF FLOORS:** Resilient floor coverings do not qualify as a waterproof floor. Seams and open edges will permit water to seep below causing adhesive and flooring failure. Some cities and states specify one piece flash coved floors in bathrooms in multiple

dwellings to avoid water leakage below.
(MFC-HL)

WAX STRIPPING (See Stripping): The process
of removing built-up residue of old wax.
(MFC-HL)

WAXING: A method of maintaining floor cover-
ing other than vinyl so as to retain its
original appearance and luster. Vinyl floor
covering should be maintained with vinyl
dressing. (MFC-HL)

WAX YELLOWING: Discoloration of floor cover-
ing due to excess amount of old wax. (MFC-HL)

WEAR: The accumulative and integrative action
of all the deleterious mechanical influences
encountered in use which tend to impair a
material's serviceability. Such influences
include, but are not limited to abrasion,
scratching, gouging and scuffing. (ASTM)

WEARLAYER: The top portion of the floor cover-
ing engineered to absorb both traffic and wear.
Thickness varies from product to product and
for specific installations: residential,
light commercial and heavy commercial. (IS)

- ABRADED YARNS:** Continuous filament yarns in which filaments have been cut or abraded at intervals and given additional twist to produce a certain degree of hairiness. Abraded yarns are usually plied or twisted with other yarns before using. (CRI)
- ABSORPTION:** The ability of a fiber, yarn or fabric to attract and hold gasses or liquids within its pores. (CRI)
- ACRYLICS:** In the carpet industry, refers to acrylic and modacrylic fibers. Acrylic fiber is a polymer composed of at least 85% by weight of acrylonitrile units. Modacrylic fiber is a polymer composed of less than 85% but at least 35% by weight of acrylonitrile units. Acrylics come only in staple form and are noted for their high durability, stain resistance and wool-like appearance. (CRI)
- AFFINITY:** The tendency of two substances to chemically unite as fiber or dyestuff. (CRI)
- AMERICAN ORIENTAL:** A term applied to loom-made American carpets of the Axminster or Wilton weave which have been manufactured in the color and pattern designs of Oriental rugs. Being without sizing, these American-made carpets are soft and pliable and can therefore be folded like an Oriental. The sheen or lustre distinguishes this type of American carpet from the other weaves. (CRI)
- ANTISTATIC:** Ability of a fabric to disperse electrostatic charges to prevent the build-up of static electricity. (CRI)
- ATTACHED CUSHION:** A cushion material permanently adhered to the back of the carpet or rug during the manufacturing process. (CRI)
- AUTOCLAVE:** An apparatus for carrying out certain finishing operations, such as heat-setting yarn under pressure in a super-heated steam atmosphere. (JJI)
- AVERAGE STIFFNESS:** Average weight in grams per denier that will stretch fiber 1%. (CRI)
- AXMINSTER:** One of the basic weaves used in making carpets. The pile tufts in this weave are mechanically inserted and bound to the back, making possible almost unlimited combinations of colors and patterns (see "weaving"). (CRI)
- BCF:** Bulkied continuous filament. Continuous strands of manmade fiber made into yarn which has been texturized to increase bulk and covering power. (CRI)
- BACKING:** Material that forms the back of the carpet, regardless of the type of construction. (1) Primary back--in a tufted carpet, the material to which surface yarns attached. May be made of jute, cotton, woven or nonwoven synthetics. (2) Secondary back--also called "double backing". Any material (jute, woven or nonwoven synthetics, scrim, foam or cushion) laminated to the primary back. (CRI)
- BACK SEAMS:** While all carpet seams are located on the back or underside of the carpet, those made when the carpet is turned over or facedown are called "back seams", while those made with the carpet faceup are called "face seams". (CRI)
- BALUSTER (BANISTER):** One of set of small pillars that support a handrail (or balustrade) on a stairway. (CRI)
- BANK:** Name applied to a setting machine yarn creel. (CRI)
- BASEBOARD:** A board skirting the lower edge of a wall. (CRI)
- BEAM:** Large, horizontal cylinders or spools. The warp yarns are wound on beams located back of the line of weave. The woven fabric is wound on a beam located usually in front, just below the line of weave. (CRI)
- BEARDING:** Long fiber fuzz on loop pile fabrics caused by fiber snagging and inadequate anchorage. (CRI)
- BEAT-UP:** (1) The action of the lay and reed when forcing the filling to the fell of the cloth. (2) The point in the timing cycle of the above operations. (3) The number of tufts per inch of length in warp row of pile. Used in connection with Axminster, Chenille and other carpets not woven over wires. Synonymous with "wire" in Wilton, Velvet, etc (CRI)
- BENT NEEDLES:** (1) Needles in the tufting machine permanently pushed out of place causing a streak or grinning, running lengthwise because of off-standard tuft spacing across the width. (2) A needle in the Jacquard that is out of alignment with punched hole in pattern cards. (CRI)
- BINDING:** A strip sewed over a carpet edge for protection against unraveling. (CRI)
- BIRDCAGE:** Colloquial name for the end of a stair rail where the bannisters are curved in a spiral to form a newel post. (CRI)
- BLEEDING:** Transfer of fiber dyes to a liquid medium. These dyes may be redeposited on other fibers and cause staining. (CRI)
- BLEND:** A fabric containing a mixture of two or more fibers or yarns, or a combination of two or more fibers spun into a yarn. (CRI)
- BOBBIN:** A spool-like device made of various materials, shapes and constructions with a head at one or both ends and a hole through its length or barrel for placement on a

- spindle or skewer. It is used to hold yarn for spinning, weaving or sewing. (CRI)
- BODY:** The compact, solid, firm or full feel of a fabric. (CRI)
- BONDED URETHANE CUSHION:** A carpet cushion made from trim generated from urethane foam product manufacture which has been granulated and bonded to form a porous foam material and fabricated into foam sheets. (CRI)
- BRAIDED:** Reversible oval or round rugs produced from braided strips of new or used material. (CRI)
- BREAKING STRENGTH:** Ability of a fabric or yarn to resist rupture by evenly applied tension. Expressed as pounds of force applied to one inch width in warpwise or fillingwise direction. (CRI)
- BROADLOOM:** An obsolete term originally used to denote carpet produced in widths wider than six feet. Was at one time used to identify "high quality". It is no longer an acceptable term in the carpet industry, the preferred word being simply "carpet". (CRI)
- BROCADE:** A carpet or rug in which a raised pattern or engraved effect is formed using heavy twisted yarn tufts on a ground of straight fibers, the colors of which are often the same. (CRI)
- BRUSSELS:** A term formerly, but now rarely, used to describe a loop pile or round-wire carpet woven on the Wilton loom. (CRI)
- BRUSSELS PITCH:** 252 or 256 dents per 27 inches in width. (CRI)
- BUCKLING:** (Also "puckers") A carpet that does not lay flat on the floor and contains ridges. Can be caused by uneven beam tension, dimensional instability and putting together mismatched carpet. Failure to stretch wall-to-wall installations sufficiently will also contribute buckles. (CRI)
- BULKING:** Processing yarn, usually by mechanical means, to fluff it up and give more coverage with the same weight. Also known as texturizing and lofting. (CRI)
- BULLNOSE:** Colloquial name for "Step Return". (CRI)
- BURLING:** A hand tailoring operation to remove any knots and loose ends. Insert missing tufts of surface yarns, and otherwise check the condition of the fabric. Also a repair operation on worn or damaged carpet is reburling. (CRI)
- CAM LOOM:** A loom in which the shedding is performed by means of cams. A velvet loom. (CRI)
- CARPET:** The general description for fabric used as a floor covering. It is occasionally used incorrectly in the plural as "carpets" or "carpeting". The preferred usage today is "carpet" in both singular and plural form. It may be used as an adjective, as in "carpeted floors". (CRI)
- CARPET CUSHION:** A term used to describe any kind of material placed under carpet to provide softness when it is walked on. Not only does carpet cushion provide a softer feel underfoot, it usually provides added acoustical benefits and longer wear life for the carpet. In some cases the carpet cushion is attached to the carpet when it is manufactured. Also referred to as "lining", "padding" or "underlay", although "carpet cushion" is the preferred term. (CRI)
- CARPET SQUARES (Tiles):** Loose laid or self adhesive backed squares of carpet. (CRI)
- CATCHER THREADS:** Warp threads in chenille Axminster carpets which attach the chenille fur to the carpet backing structure. (CRI)
- CELLULOSE:** A carbohydrate of complex molecular structure which forms the basic framework of plant cells and walls. Used as a basic raw material in making rayon. (CRI)
- CHAIN:** (1) The binder warp yarn that works over and under the filling shots of the carpet. (2) Axminster loom--refers to the endless chain that carries the tube frames. (3) Dobby loom--refers to the endless chain of pattern selector bars. (CRI)
- CHAIN BINDERS:** Yarns running warpwise (lengthwise) in the back of a woven carpet, binding construction yarns together in a woven construction. (CRI)
- CHENILLE:** A pile fabric woven by the insertion of a prepared weft row of surface yarn tufts in a "fur" or "caterpillar" form through very fine but strong cotton "catcher" warp yarns, and over a heavy woolen backing yarn. (CRI)
- COCKLING:** A curliness or crimpiness appearing in the cut face pile as a result of a yarn condition. (CRI)
- COMB:** An open-top reed. (CRI)
- COMBER BOARD (also "Comper Board"):** (1) The part of the Brussels Card Jacquard mechanism that raises all face yarns simultaneously for the insertion of the bottom filling shot. (2) The part of the Fine Index Jacquard through which the lingoes are threaded to hold them in place. (CRI)
- COMBINATION:** A term which refers to yarns or fabrics: (1) A combination yarn is composed of two or more yarns having the same or different fibers or twists, e.g., one yarn may have a high twist; the other, little or no twist. (2) A

- combination fabric is one which uses the above yarns. (CRI)
- COMMERCIAL MATCHING:** Matching of colors within acceptable tolerances, or with a color variation that is barely detectable to the naked eye. (CRI)
- CONSTRUCTION:** Carpet construction is defined by stating the manufacturing method (tufted, woven, etc.), and the final arrangement of materials achieved by following specifications. (CRI)
- CONTINUOUS FILAMENT:** Continuous strand of synthetic fiber extruded in yarn form, without the need for spinning which all natural fibers require. (CRI)
- COP:** A centerless package of filling yarn suitable for insertion into a shuttle. (CRI)
- COTTON:** A soft, white, fibrous substance composed of the hairs clothing the seeds of an erect, freely branching tropical plant (cotton plant). (1) Thread spun from cotton. (2) Fabric made of cotton. (CRI)
- COUNT:** (1) A number identifying yarn size or weight per unit or vice versa depending on the particular system being used. (2) Count of fabric is indicated by the number of warp ends and filling ends per inch. (CRI)
- COVER:** Descriptive of how the face yarn covers the back. (CRI)
- CRAB:** A hand device usually used for stretching carpet in a small area where a power stretcher or knee kicker cannot be used. (CRI)
- CREEL:** The rack located adjacent a tufting machine which holds the cones of pile yarn which supply yarn to the needles of a tufting machine. (CRI)
- CREELING:** The process of mounting yarn packages on the frame. (CRI)
- CRIB/Axminster loom:** Refers to the frame work that carries the pattern spool chain. (CRI)
- CRIMP:** Processing yarn, usually by heat or pressure, to fix a wavy texture and increase bulk. (CRI)
- CRIMPING:** Method of texturizing staple and continuous filament yarn to produce irregular alignment of fibers and increase bulk and covering power; also facilitates interlocking of fibers, which is necessary for spinning staple fibers into yarn. (CRI)
- CROCKING:** Term used to describe excess color rubbing off as the result of improper dye penetration, fixation or selection. (CRI)
- CROPPING:** The passage of carpet under a revolving cylinder fitted with cutting blades to obtain a level surface and a uniform height of pile. (CRI)
- CROSS DYED:** Multicolored effects produced in a fabric with fibers of different dye affinities. (CRI)
- CROSS SEAMS.** Seams made by joining the ends of carpet together. (CRI)
- CUSHION-BACK CARPET:** Carpet having a cushioning lining, padding or underlay material as an integral part of its backing. (CRI)
- CUSTOM TUFTED:** Carpet or rugs in which pile yarns are manually tufted with hand machines or by narrow width tufting machines. (CRI)
- CUT:** A length of fabric, such as carpet. (CRI)
- CUT PILE:** A fabric, the face of which is composed of cut ends of pile yarn. (CRI)
- CYLINDER:** The part of the Jacquard that supports and holds the punched pattern cards in position while the plungers or needles that control the yarn selection pass through the card. This "cylinder" is not cylindrical in shape but is frequently 4-, 5- or 6-sided. (CRI)
- DEAD (Pile yarn):** The pile yarn in a Wilton carpet which remains hidden in the backing structure when not forming a pile tuft. (CRI)
- DEEP DYED:** Refers to dye penetration in carpet fibers which permits clear, true carpet colors that retain their brilliance for the life of the carpet. (CRI)
- DEFLECTED NEEDLE:** Needles in the tufting machine that are pushed aside by a warp end in the backing cloth causing a streak or "grinning" running lengthwise because of off-standard tuft spacing across the width. (CRI)
- DELUSTERED FIBER:** Manmade fiber on which the normally high sheen has been reduced. (CRI)
- DENIER:** Unit of weight for the size of a single filament. The higher the denier, the heavier the yarn. Denier is equivalent to the number of grams per 9000 meters. (CRI)
- DENSITY:** The amount of pile packed into a given volume of carpet, usually measured in ounces of pile yarn per unit volume. (CRI)
- DENT:** (1) The space between wires of reed or heddles or harness through which the warp ends are drawn. (2) The space between two chains in a fabric. (CRI)

DIFFERENTIAL DYEING FIBERS (dye-variant fibers) Fibers, natural or manmade, so treated or modified in composition that their affinity for dyes becomes changed; i.e., to be reserved, dye lighter or dye darker than normal fibers, dependent upon the particular dyes and methods of application employed. (CRI)

DIMENSIONAL STABILITY: Tendency of a fabric to retain its size and shape; may be brought about by chemical treatment or mechanical means; e.g., a secondary backing adds dimensional stability to carpet. (CRI)

DIRTY BACK: Excess face yarn showing on the back of carpet. The usual causes are poor timing, insufficient tension on the face yarn, excessively bulky face yarns, and insufficient stuffers. (CRI)

DOBBY: A device that selects the rotation in which one or more of a group of harnesses are raised over a filling shot. Can float an end over as many filling shots as desired. Produces geometric patterns. (CRI)

DOMESTIC: Describes carpet made by skilled craftsmen in the United States. (CRI)

DOPE DYED (Same as Spun Dyed and Solution Dyed) This applies to synthetic fibers only. The coloring materials are added to the solution before extruding through a spinneret to form the filament. (CRI)

DOUBLE BACK: A woven or nonwoven material adhered to the backing of some carpet as additional reinforcement, to provide greater dimensional stability and improved tuft bind. Also known as scrim back. (CRI)

DOUBLE BEATING: Two successive beats of the reed to press heavy or bulky filling in place. (CRI)

DRAW: The manner and rotation in which the warp ends are placed in the loom heddles and reeds. (CRI)

DRAWING-IN OR DRAWING-UP: The process of placing the warp ends through the heddles and reeds of the loom. (CRI)

DRAW-STRAIGHT: The ends are drawn in straight or direct sequence from first to last harness in the plan. (CRI)

DROP MATCH: When the design in a carpet must be dropped in the next combining width of carpet to maintain the pattern. (CRI)

DRUGGET: A coarse, heavy imported fabric, felted or plain woven, usually of all wool. The designs are either woven into a fabric or printed. (CRI)

DRY FOAM: A detergent solution containing only a small amount of water is mechanically worked into the surface of the carpet and the loose soil is removed by a vacuum. (CRI)

DRY ROT: Is identified by a loss of strength, generally in the backing causing the material to break or tear easily. Associated with growth of bacteria and fungus on the back of the rug or carpet. (CRI)

DRYING CANS (Cylinders): Heated rotating cylinders over which textile materials are passed to dry them. (CRI)

DUTCHMAN: Colloquial name for a narrow strip of carpet side seamed to standard width to compensate for unusual offsets, sloping walls, etc., but never used as a substitute for good planning and proper stretching techniques. (CRI)

DYEING: The process of coloring materials; impregnating fabric with dyestuff.

1. Solution dyed: Synthetic yarn which is spun from a colored solution; the filament is thus impregnated with the pigment.

2. Stock dyed: Fibers are dyed before spinning.

3. Yarn (or skein) dyed: Yarn dyed before being fabricated into carpet.

4. Piece dyeing unfinished carpet: Carpet dyed "in a piece" after tufting or weaving but before other finishing processes such as latexing or foaming.

5. Cross dyeing: Method of dyeing fabrics with dyestuffs which have different affinities for different types of yarns.

6. Space dyeing: Process whereby different colors are "printed" along the length of yarn before it is manufactured into carpet.

7. Continuous dyeing: The process of dyeing carpet in a continuous production line, rather than piece dyeing separate lots. Most often done on Kusters continuous dyeing equipment which flows on dyestuffs, as distinguished from submerging carpet in separate dye becks. (CRI)

DYE BECK: A large vat into which roll lengths are submerged for piece dyeing. (CRI)

DYESTUFF: The substance which adds color or textiles by absorption into the fiber or by chemical attachment. (CRI)

ELASTICITY: The ratio of stress to strain within the elastic limit of the material. (CRI)

ELECTROSTATIC FLOCKING: The process used for the majority of flocked commercial carpets. Specially treated fibers are charged by an electrostatic field. When

- the charged fibers encounter the object to be coated, they are moving vertically at a high speed and they become firmly embedded in the adhesive. (CRI)
- EMBOSSSED:** In carpet, the type of pattern formed when heavy twisted tufts are used in a ground of straight yarns to create an engraved appearance. Both the straight and twisted yarns are often of the same color. (CRI)
- END:** (1) An individual warp yarn. A warp is composed of a number of ends. (2) A short length of remnant. (CRI)
- EXTENDED LENGTH:** The length of the face pile yarn used to make one inch of tufted carpet. (CRI)
- FACE SEAMS.** Seams, either sewed or cemented, that are made without turning the entire carpet over or facedown. They are made during installation where it is not possible to make back seams. (CRI)
- FADEOMETER:** Standard laboratory device for testing a fabric's resistance to sunlight. (CRI)
- FADING:** Loss of color usually caused by exposure to sunlight or atmospheric gases. (CRI)
- FASTNESS:** Property of dye to retain its color when cloth is exposed to sun, perspiration, atmosphere, washing, or other color destroying agents. The term "fastness" is a relative one. A dye may be reasonably fast to washing and only moderately fast to light. Fastness of color is tested by standard procedures. (CRI)
- FELL or FELL OF THE CLOTH:** The line to which a filling end is beaten by the reed. (CRI)
- FELT OR FELTED:** An inexpensive rug, usually woven in plain colors (or stenciled or printed), in plain flat weaves and felted. (CRI)
- FELTING:** The process of pressing or matting together various types of hair or fibers to form a continuous fabric, known as felt. (CRI)
- FIBER:** Any substance, natural or synthetic, strong enough to be used in thread or yarn form for processing as a textile. (CRI)
- FIBER CUSHION:** A term used to describe carpet cushion made by the needle punch process out of animal hair or jute material, or a blend. Some constructions are made with a ribber face and backed by hair or fiber. (CRI)
- FIBER RUGS:** Rugs made of specially prepared paper yarns in combination with cotton and wool yarns. Fiber rugs are reversible, come in plain or twill weaves and are often sized. (CRI)
- FILAMENT:** A single strand of any kind of fiber, natural or synthetic. (CRI)
- FILLER:** Fuller's earth or clay-or similar material--used in the compounding of latex and attached cushion. (CRI)
- FILLING YARN:** Yarns, usually of cotton, jute or kraftcord, running across a woven fabric and used with the chain yarns to bind the pile tufts to the backing yarns. (CRI)
- FILM YARN (cut-film or slit-film yarns):** Yarn composed of one or more continuous narrow strips of manmade film (usually slit-film, but strips may be extruded), or incorporating one or more strips as a major component. (CRI)
- FINISHING:** A final process through which fabrics are put; such as shearing, steaming, application of secondary back or cushion, application of soil retardant or antistatic material, etc. (CRI)
- FLEXIBILITY:** The property of bending without breaking. (CRI)
- FLOAT:** (1) A planned part of the design in which the face yarn is carried over two or more wires. (2) A defect in the face of carpet resulting from a long loose end of face yarn that is not securely fastened into the back. (CRI)
- FLOCKING:** Short, cropped fiber or flock is adhered, usually by electrostatic processes, to a base fabric, resulting in a short pile material with a velvety texture. (CRI)
- FLOOR MAT:** Carpet usually less than 22-1/2 in. wide and less than 7-1/2 sq. ft. in area. (CRI)
- FLUFFING:** Appearance on carpet surface of loose fiber fragments left during manufacture; not a defect but a characteristic which disappears after carpet use and vacuuming. (CRI)
- FRAMES:** Racks at back of the Wilton loom holding spools from which yarns are fed into the loom, each frame holding separate colors; thus a 3-frame Wilton has three colors in the design. (CRI)
- FREE FORM:** A floor area bounded by walls and of nonrectangular shape. Sometimes called "form-fit area". (CRI)

FRIEZE: (pronounced "free-zay"): A tightly twisted yarn that gives a rough, nubby appearance to carpet pile. (CRI)

FRIEZE YARN: A hard-twisted yarn used commonly in plain fabrics to effect a rough, knotty textured appearance in the surface pile. (CRI)

FULL ROLL: An unbound cut of carpet, described in the carpet industry as being over 30 feet in length, by the width of the production run from which it was cut. (CRI)

FUZZING: Hairy effect on fabric surface caused by wild fibers or slack yarn twist, by fibers slipping out of yarn or contour in either service or wet cleaning. It is corrected by shearing in manufacturing and by the professional cleaner. Carpet of continuous filament yarn is fuzzed by filament snagging and breaking. (CRI)

GAGE OR GAUGE: The distance between two needle points expressed in fraction of an inch. Applies to both knitting and tufting. (CRI)

GAUGE/PITCH: The number of ends of surface yarn counting across the width of carpet. In woven carpet, pitch is the number of ends of yarn in 27 inches of width; e.g., 216 divided by 27 = 8 ends per inch. In tufted carpet, gauge also means the number of ends of surface yarn per inch counting across the carpet; e.g., 1/8 gauge = 8 ends per inch. To convert gauge to pitch, multiply ends per inch by 27; e.g., 1/10 gauge is equivalent to 270 pitch, or 10 ends per inch x 27. One-eighth gauge is 8 ends of yarn per inch x 27 = 216 pitch. (CRI)

GAUGE WIRE: A type of standing wire used with an extra filling yarn to control the height of the pile. (CRI)

GRASS: Rugs made of certain long jointless grasses, twisted with cotton threads into yarns. Grass rugs are usually reversible and come in plain weave and color. (CRI)

GRATE or GRID or HOOK PLATE: The part of the Fine Index Jacquard in which the bottom hooks of Jacquard hook wires are set when the top hook is not engaged by the griff. It is also used to raise all the remaining face yarns that were not selected to be raised by the griff to permit the insertion of the bottom shot. (CRI)

GREIGE GOODS (pronounced "gray goods"): Undyed carpet or other textile materials. (CRI)

GRIFF or GRIFFE: (1) The part of the Fine Index Jacquard consisting of members containing the metal knives, (2) Also applied to the metal lifting knives used to lift the hook selected to be up at the correct time. (CRI)

GRIN: A term used to indicate the condition where the backing of the carpet shows between the rows of pile tuft; e.g., some carpet may show the backing when layed over the nosing of a step. (CRI)

GROUND COLOR: The background color against which the top colors create the pattern or figure in the design. (CRI)

HAIR: Animal fiber other than wool or silk. (CRI)

HAND: The "feel" of a carpet in the hand--determined by such factors as pile height, quality and kind of fibers, type of construction, type of backing and dimensional stability. (CRI)

HAND ABSORPTION: A detergent solution is generated into a foam which is worked into the pile of the carpet by sponges. The loose soil is removed by absorption into the clean sponges. The application of the foam and removal is done by hand. (CRI)

HARNES: (1) The frame holding the heddles through which the warp ends are drawn and then raised and lowered to form the shed. (2) The cords that connect the Jacquard hooks to the lingo heddles. (CRI)

HEATHER: A multicolor effect provided by intimately blending fibers of different colors prior to spinning carpet yarn. (CRI)

HEAT SET: Stabilization of yarns to insure no change in size or shape; the process of heat setting in an autoclave, using superheated steam under pressure. (CRI)

HEDDLE: A series of vertical cords or wires, each of which has in the middle a loop or eye which receives a warp yarn. The two heddle frames, each carrying a set of chain warp yarns, rise and fall alternately forming the shed through which the weft shuttle passes. (CRI)

HEDDLE FRAME: The frame on which the heddles are mounted. (CRI)

HESSIAN: Plain cloth, usually of jute, containing single yarns of approximately the same count in warp and weft. (CRI)

HIGH DENSITY: A term to describe a material with heavier than normal weight-per-unit volume. (CRI)

HIGH DENSITY FOAM: Rubber product applied as a liquid foam, then cured, to form an integral part of the carpet back. The minimum standards are weight--38 oz./sq. yd., thickness--1/8 in., density--25 lbs./cu. ft. (CRI)

HIGH LOW: A multilevel pile, sometimes combining cut and looped surface yarns. (CRI)

HOOKE RUGS: Yarn or strips of cloth inserted into a prewoven cloth stenciled with a pattern. Usually a hand or single needle process. Modern tufting is mechanized hooking. (CRI)

- HOOKS** also **WIRE HOOKS**: (1) The vertical wires in a Jacquard that are hooked on each end and the bottom hook attached by cords to the lingo heddles carrying the pattern yarn. The top hooks are positioned by the needles to either be caught onto or clear the lifting knife in the griff. In most Jacquards, the hooks that are picked up by the lifting knives raise a face yarn end over the filling shot and/or wire. (2) The hook-shaped stamped metal latches used to catch the pile after it is beaten up and retard the wire's tendency to jump or fall toward the reed. (CRI)
- HOPPER**: The assembly that engages the pile wire head, drawing it from the front of the wire set and returning it under the pile shed. (CRI)
- HOT MELT**: A blend of polymer and filling applied in a heated state to a carpet back, to lock in surface yarns and for lamination. (CRI)
- INDOOR/OUTDOOR**: Obsolete term--see outdoor carpet. The first carpet produced for outdoor use was named indoor/outdoor carpet. Over a period of time this term was erroneously thought by retailers and consumers to indicate "that if it is okay for outdoor use it has superior qualities indoors." Since this statement is generally incorrect, the carpet industry wants to avoid perpetuating this term. (CRI)
- INGRAIN CARPET**: A double faced pileless carpet using colored filling yarns to make the design. The fabric is reversible and the designs and colors on the face and back will also be in reverse positions. This type was also called Scotch or Kidderminster. (CRI)
- INGRAINING**: Mixing and weaving threads of various colors. (CRI)
- JACQUARD**: The pattern control on a Wilton loom. A chain of perforated cardboard "cards" punched according to the design elements, which when brought into position activates this mechanism by causing it to select the desired color of yarn to form the design on the pile surface. The unselected colors are woven "dormant" through the body of the fabric. (CRI)
- JACQUARD CARDS**: Punched cards (usually laced together) which are presented to the Jacquard in sequence, for the selection of lifting of the pile ends as required for patterning. (CRI)
- JAMB**: The side of a door frame, doorway or window; usually the side on which the opening for the lock is placed. (CRI)
- JASPE**: Irregular stripes of two hues, shades or values of the same color used to produce a particular effect on the pile yarn of plain or even designed fabrics. Variques jaspe effects can be produced by varying the twist of the yarn. (CRI)
- JERKER BAR** (tufting): The guide or thread jerker which takes up slack tufting yarn during the upstroke of the needle and controls the amount supplied for the backstroke. (CRI)
- JUTE**: A fibrous skin between the bark and stalk of a plant native to India and the Far East. Shredded and spun, it forms a strong and durable yarn used in carpet backing to add strength, weight and stiffness. (CRI)
- KEMP**: Coarse, brittle white fiber occurring frequently in "nonblooded" carpet wools. These fibers do not accept dye and consequently an excess could be prominent and undesirable. (CRI)
- KIDDERMINSTER CARPET**: Originated in a town of that name in England. Similar to Ingrain Carpet. (CRI)
- KILMARNOCK CARPET**: Similar to Ingrain Carpet. (CRI)
- KNEE KICKER**: A short tool with gripping "teeth" at one end and a padded cushion at the other used in making small stretches during carpet installation. (CRI)
- KNIFE**: Refers to either of the two steel blades of an Axminster loom that operates as a shear to cut and make the pile ends. (CRI)
- KNITTING**: A method of fabricating a carpet in one operation, as in weaving. Surface and backing yarns are looped together with a stitching yarn on machines with three sets of needles. (CRI)
- KRAFTCORD**: A tightly twisted yarn made from kraft paper used as a backing yarn in carpet weaves as an alternate for cotton or jute. (CRI)
- KUSTERS DYEING**: Named after the Kusters dye machine. This is a piece dyeing technique that allows uniform and continuous dyeing in great quantities. (CRI)
- LAMINATED**: Two or more layers of firmly united material. (CRI)
- LASH BOARD** or **LIFTING BOARD**: The part of the Brussels Jacquard that contains keyhole-shaped notches in a board through which lash cords with positioned knots are threaded and then to lift the face yarn selected by the pattern card for the insertion of the wire and shot. (CRI)
- LATEX**: A milky, rubbery fluid found in several seed plants, and used to seal the back of carpet and for lamination. May be used on tufted or woven carpet. (CRI)

- LATEXING:** A term used to describe the application of a natural or synthetic latex compound to the back of carpet. (CRI)
- LAY:** (1) A collective name given to the parts of the loom that perform the operation of beating up. The parts include reed, reed cap, race plate, shuttles, shuttle brakes, picker sticks, lug, cams. (2) The tendency of pile tufts or loops to lean in a certain direction. (CRI)
- LENO WEAVE:** Weave in which warp yarns, arranged in pairs, are twisted around one another between "picks" of weft yarn. (CRI)
- LEVELLING BOARD or PADDER:** The part of the Brussels Jacquard that assists in properly positioning the needles or plungers that were pushed back by the unpunched portions of the pattern card. (CRI)
- LEVEL LOOP:** A construction in which the carpet face yarns are tufted or woven into loops of the same pile height. (CRI)
- LINGO or LINGOE:** The weight attached by a cord to the heddles to assist in holding a taut vertical position. (CRI)
- LINING:** See Carpet Cushion. (CRI)
- LIP:** The chain and/or stuffer left on the edge of carpet after it has been cut. (CRI)
- LOOM:** A machine in which yarn or thread is woven into a fabric by the crossing of the warp or chain by other threads, called the weft or filling, at right angles to the warp threads. (CRI)
- LOOPED PILE:** Pile surface in which looped yarns are left uncut. In woven carpets, sometimes referred to as "round wire". (CRI)
- LOOPERS:** The thin flat steel components that move beside the inserted needles and hook the tufting yarn into loops. (CRI)
- LOW ROWS:** Rows of excessively low pile height across the width of the carpet. Usually due to run out of the final bits of face yarn on the spools on the Axminster loom. (CRI)
- LUSTER:** Sheen of yarns, fiber or finished fabrics. (CRI)
- LUSTER FABRIC:** Any cut pile fabric woven with surface yarns spun from special types of staple and chemically washed, like handwoven Oriental fabrics, to give a bright sheen or luster. (CRI)
- LUSTERING:** Finishing process produces luster on yarns, cloth. (CRI)
- MARKER:** (1) A distinguishing threadline woven in the back toward the right hand edge to enable the workroom or installer to assemble breadths of carpet and have the pile lay in one and same direction. (2) A pattern marking point of a distinguishing color woven into the back to each edge to enable the workroom or the installer to assemble breadths of carpet and match the pattern when working on the under side. (CRI)
- MATTING:** Extreme pile crush combined with entanglement of fibers and tufts. (CRI)
- MENDING (picking):** A hand operation carried out on carpet before finishing to remove any knots and loose ends of yarn, to insert pile tufts where missing and to replace and repair backing yarns as required. (CRI)
- METALLIC FIBER:** A manufactured fiber composed of metal, plastic-coated metal, metal-coated plastic or a core completely covered by metal. The most important characteristic of metallic fiber in carpet is to reduce buildup of static electricity. (CRI)
- MILL END:** The remainder of a roll carpet, generally described in the carpet industry as being over 9 feet in length, but under 21 feet in length, by the width of the roll from which it was cut. (CRI)
- MIL:** A unit commonly used for measuring the diameter of textile monofilaments--1/1000 inch. (CRI)
- MITRE:** The junction of two pieces of carpet, wood or other material at an angle, usually 45 degrees to form a right angle, but may be any combination of angles. (CRI)
- MODACRYLICS:** Refer to Acrylics. (CRI)
- MOLDED RUBBER BACK:** A type of carpet backing. Liquid rubber is coated on the carpet back and then rolled out with an embossed roller. (CRI)
- MOLDING:** A strip, generally of wood, at the bottom of a baseboard or wall, to cover the joint between wall and floor. (CRI)
- MONOFILAMENT:** A filament large and strong enough to be used directly as a yarn for making textiles through any established process. (CRI)
- MORESQUE:** A special coloring or textural effect created by winding together in the spinning process two or more yarns of different colors or tones of the same color. (CRI)
- MULTIFILAMENT:** Yarns made of many filaments plied or spun together. The finer the filaments spun together, the softer and more luxurious the yarn and textiles made from it. (CRI)
- NAP:** The pile on the surface of a carpet or rug. (CRI)
- NARROW CARPET:** Fabric woven 27 inches and 36 inches in width. (CRI)

- NATURAL GRAY YARN:** Unbleached and undyed yarn spun from a blend of black, brown or gray wools. (CRI)
- NEEDLE:** (1) Jacquard loom--The horizontal wires, rods or plungers. The forward and backward movement of which is controlled by the pattern punch cards. One end is placed into a needle board and the ends extend slightly beyond the board surface. The other end projects into a levelling board, padder, needle box or spring box. The forward and backward movements position the lash cord knots to be picked up by the lash board, lifting board or comb board, or the hooks to be picked up by the griff remain in the grate. (2) Axminster loom--Refers to metal rod used to insert a shot of filling yarn. (3) Knitting--The hooks that make the loops. (4) Tufting--The needle with an eye to punch the pile yarn through the backing material. (5) Needlepunching--The needle that stitches the fibers to a base fabric. (CRI)
- NEEDLE BAR:** The part of the knitting and tufting machine used to hold the needles in position. (CRI)
- NEEDLE BOARD:** (1) The part of the Jacquard that holds the end of the needles that are presented to the punched cards carried on the cylinder. (2) The base that holds the needles for needlepunching. (CRI)
- NEEDLE BOX--SPRING BOX, LEVELLING BOARD, PADDER:** The part of the Jacquard that holds the opposite ends of the needles to the needle board. Contains springs to reposition the needles pushed back by the unpunched parts of the pattern cards. (CRI)
- NEEDLEPUNCHING:** Layers or batts of loose fiber are needled into a core or scrim fabric to form a felted or flat-textured material. A needlepunched fabric can be embossed, printed or laminated to a cushion, or otherwise finished. (CRI)
- NOIL:** A by-product in worsted yarn manufacture, consisting of short wool fibers, less than a determined length, which are combed out. (CRI)
- NONWOVEN:** A fabric made up of a web of fibers held together by a chemical or fibrous bonding agent. (CRI)
- NOSING:** The front dividing line of a step, where the top of a riser joins the front of a tread. (CRI)
- NYLON:** A synthetic material, of synthetic polyamids derivable from coal, air and water, which is adapted for fashioning into filaments of extreme toughness, strength and elasticity. (CRI)
- ODOR:** Abnormal or obnoxious smells. Usually caused by fungi attacking jute or sulfur compounds in latex back-size. (CRI)
- OILY WIRES:** A gray or black discoloration across the width of the carpet due to both dirty and oily wire. If oil is colorless, appearance of defect is delayed until carpet is in service and the difference in soiling rate makes it apparent. (CRI)
- OILY YARN:** Soiled yarn running in the warp direction. Not always apparent at time of inspection but is revealed in service by difference in soiling rate. Generally caused by excessive oiling of rings or spinning or twisting equipment. (CRI)
- OLEFINS:** Any long chain synthetic polymer composed of at least 85% by weight of ethylene, propylene or other olefin units. (CRI)
- ORIENTAL RUGS:** Handwoven rugs made in the Middle East and the Orient. (CRI)
- OUTDOOR CARPET:** A term used to describe carpet that has been specially engineered so that all elements of the product will resist the ravages of the sun, rain and snow. Outdoor carpet is generally made of all synthetic material. Special attention has been paid to sun fade degradation of the pile fiber. (CRI)
- PACKAGE DYED:** Spun and wound yarn, placed on large perforated forms, is colored by dye forced through the perforations. (CRI)
- PADDING:** See Carpet Cushion. (CRI)
- PATENT-BACK CARPET:** Carpet so constructed that the fabric can be cut in any direction, without raveling of edges. The edges are joined by tape and adhesives instead of being sewed. (CRI)
- PATTERN:** (1) Any ornamental feature that is decorative in a fabric and serves to distinguish it from plainness. (2) The sketch to scale showing a design. (CRI)
- PATTERN BARS:** A series of bars on the tufting machine that are linked together by an endless chain to make a complete pattern. A bar extends across the width of the machine and contains grooves to accommodate each single end of face yarn. The grooves are cut to various predetermined depths to control the pile height by regulating the yarnfeed and obtain a surface pattern. (CRI)
- PATTERN ROLLERS:** A combination of rollers on the tufting machine that determines both the pile height and the pattern by controlling speed of the yarnfeed. (CRI)
- PATTERN STREAKS:** Occurs in all patterned carpet to some degree. Sometimes the figures line up in such a way as to be too obvious and objectionable. (CRI)
- PICK:** The number of weft yarns shuttled across the warp yarns, and indicating closeness of weave lengthwise. A high grade Wilton fabric may have 39 picks per inch, or 3 shots of weft to each wire. (CRI)

- PICKING:** (1) The operation of taking the weft (filling) through the warp shed during weaving. (2) See mending. (CRI)
- PICKS PER INCH:** The number of filling insertions required to make one inch of fabric. (CRI)
- PIECE DYED:** Entire carpet immersed in dye bath. Used for dyeing tufted carpet. (CRI)
- PIGMENT:** A finely divided, insoluble substance used to deluster or color yarns or fabrics. (CRI)
- PIGMENTED YARNS:** A dull or colored yarn spun from a solution to which a pigment has been added. (CRI)
- PILE:** The upright ends of yarn, whether cut or looped, that form the wearing surface of carpet or rugs. (CRI)
- PILE CRUSH:** Bending of pile by constant walking or the pressure of furniture. (CRI)
- PILE DENSITY:** The number of tufts both across and lengthwise of the carpet. In tufted carpet the measure across the carpet is called needles per inch, or gauge. Lengthwise is called stitches per inch. (CRI)
- PILE HEIGHT:** The height of pile measured from the surface of the back to the top of the pile. (CRI)
- PILE SETTING:** Brushing done after shampooing to restore the damp pile to its original height. A pile lifting machine or a pile brush is used. (CRI)
- PILE WIRE:** A metal strip or rod over which the yarn is woven to produce a pile. (CRI)
- PILE YARN:** The yarn used to form the loops or tufts of carpet. (CRI)
- PILLING:** A condition in certain fibers in which strands of the fiber separate and become knotted with other strands, causing a rough, spotty appearance. Pilled tufts should never be pulled from carpet, but may be cut off with sharp scissors at the pile surface. (CRI)
- PITCH:** See Gauge. (CRI)
- PLAIN or FLAT WEAVE:** A fabric with a flat surface, in plain, twill or fancy weaves, having a printed, stenciled, or "woven in" design, and generally reversible. (CRI)
- PLANTING:** A method of placing spools of different colors of surface yarn in frames back of Jacquard Wilton looms so that more colors will appear in the design than are supplied in the full solid colors used. These extra "planted" colors are usually arranged in groups of each shade to give added interest to the pattern. (CRI)
- PLUSH FINISH:** A term used to describe a dense cut pile carpet in which the surface has a solid "mirror-like" appearance. The ends of each tuft tend to merge into a common surface. (CRI)
- PLY:** The number of strands of yarn twisted together to form a single yarn, as in "2-ply" or "3-ply". (CRI)
- PLIED YARNS:** Two or more strands, ends or plies either twisted or otherwise cohesively entwined, intermingled or entangled into a heavier yarn. (CRI)
- POLYESTER:** A manufactured fiber in which the fiber-forming substance is any long chain synthetic polymer composed of at least 85% by weight of an ester of a dihydric alcohol and terephthalic acid (p-HOOC-C₆H₄--COOH). (CRI)
- POLYMER:** In synthetics, the basic chemical unit from which fibers are made. It is made of large complex molecules formed by uniting molecules (monomers). (CRI)
- POLYPROPYLENE:** High-molecular weight paraffin fiber made by the polymerization of propylene (FTC classification Olefin). (CRI)
- POWDER:** Absorbent granules containing a dry cleaning fluid and other cleaning agents are sprinkled over the surface of the carpet. This is worked into the carpet pile. Vacuuming removes the granules and attached soil. (CRI)
- POWER STRETCHER:** An extension-type version of the knee-kicker, with more "teeth" arranged in a head which can be adjusted for depth of "bite" or used to stretch larger areas of carpet that cannot be handled by the knee kicker. (CRI)
- PRIME URETHANE CUSHION:** Carpet cushion made from virgin polyether urethane foam slab stacks. (CRI)
- PRIMARY BACKING:** The material on which the carpet is constructed. The material to which the visible secondary backing is anchored. Usually jute or polypropylene. (CRI)
- PRINT DYED:** The pattern is screen printed on the woven carpet by means of pre-metalized dyes. (CRI)
- PRINTED CARPET:** Carpet with surface patterns applied by means of dyes used on engraved rollers, wood blocks or screens. (CRI)
- PRINTING:** The process of producing a pattern with dyestuffs on carpet and rugs. May be done by several methods, such as screen printing (e.g., on Zimmer equipment, which may be flat bed or

- rotary screen printing), or on roller equipment operating on the relief-printed principle (e.g., Stalwart equipment). (CRI)
- PUCKERING:** A condition in a carpet seam, due to poor layout or unequal stretching, etc., wherein the carpet on one side of the seam is longer or shorter than that on the other side, causing the long side to wrinkle or develop a "pleated" effect. (CRI)
- QUARTER:** A quarter of a yard, or 9 inches, formerly used as a unit of woven carpet-width measure. A 27 inch carpet was therefore designated 3/4 carpet and a 36 inch carpet was known as 4/4 carpet. Today actual feet and inches are given in describing carpet width. (CRI)
- QUARTER DROP-MATCH:** See Match. (CRI)
- QUARTER-ROUND:** A length of wood used for finishing moldings and joints between walls and floors, four of which, if placed together along their straight edges, would make a completely circular (i.e., cylindrical) "pole". (CRI)
- RAG RUG:** (1) A plain weave made of rag strips, filling and cotton chain warp.
(2) Braided rag strips stitched together by hand or machine. (CRI)
- RANDOM SHEARED:** Textured pattern created by shearing some of the top or higher loops and leaving others looped. (CRI)
- REED:** A frame holding thin strips of steel with narrow spaces between them through which the warp ends are drawn in a definite order. The reed is mounted in the lay and used to distribute and spread warp yarns and beat the filling up to the fell of the cloth. (CRI)
- REED MARK:** Streak running in the warp direction caused by loose or bent reed. (CRI)
- REMNANT:** The remainder of a roll of carpet generally described in the carpet industry as being under 9 feet in length by the width of the roll from which it was cut. (CRI)
- REPEAT:** The distance from a point in a pattern figure to the same point where it occurs again, measuring lengthwise of the fabric. (CRI)
- RESIDUAL SHRINKAGE:** Amount of shrinkage remaining in a fabric after the decrease in dimensions has been determined by pre-shrinking; decrease in dimensions of a fabric after washing or dry cleaning. (CRI)
- RESILIENCE:** The ability of a carpet fabric or padding to spring back to its original shape or thickness after being crushed or walked upon. (CRI)
- RESIST PRINTING:** A dye-resist agent is printed on tufted carpet prior to piece dyeing. (CRI)
- RESTRETCH:** A term applied to the remedial steps necessary for the correction of improperly laid carpet resulting from application of wrong stretching techniques, carpet defects or undetermined causes. (CRI)
- REVERSE COLORING:** The process whereby the dominant background colors and the top colors of a fabric are reversed. It can be done in Wilton weaves by changing the yarn colors of each frame. (CRI)
- RISER:** The vertical or front surface of a step, rising from the back of a tread. (CRI)
- ROTARY BRUSH:** A detergent solution is worked into the pile of the carpet by the bristles of the brush. Some machines are equipped with vacuums to remove the loose soil and solution. (CRI)
- ROUND WIRE or LOOPED PILE:** A Wilton or velvet carpet woven with the pile yarn uncut. (CRI)
- ROVING:** A loose cluster of fibers drawn or rubbed into a single strand with very little twist; an intermediate stage between sliver and yarn. (CRI)
- ROWS or WIRES:** The number of lengthwise yarn tufts in one inch of carpet. In Axminster or chenille, they are called "rows", in Wilton and velvet, they are known as "wires". (CRI)
- RUBBER:** A cushioned carpet back which may be applied in various forms, such as contoured, compressed or slab. Also, a separate rug or carpet cushion. (CRI)
- RUG:** A term used to designate soft floor coverings laid on the floor but not fastened to it. As a rule, a rug does not cover the entire floor. (CRI)
- SAPONIFICATION:** Reaction which causes acetate to be converted to regenerated cellulose. (CRI)
- SAXONY FINISH:** A term used to describe a dense cut pile, usually made of yarns that have been plied and heat set, so that each tuft end has a distinguishable appearance. (CRI)
- SCALE DRAWING:** A drawing in which the measurements represented are drawn to a predetermined scale, such as 1/4 inch equals one foot, so that all elements and dimensions in the drawing are proportional in length and width to the actual room, floor or building depicted. (CRI)
- SCALLOPS:** The up-and-down uneven effect along the edge of carpet caused by indentations where tacks are driven. (CRI)

- SCRAMBLER BOX:** A device incorporated in some types of tufting pattern attachments to equalize the distance of travel of all pile ends in the pattern groups repeating across the machine width, and thus avoid problems arising due to differences in tensioning. (CRI)
- SCRIBING:** Transferring the exact irregularities of a wall or other surface onto a piece of carpet, wood or paper, which is then cut to fit those irregularities. (CRI)
- SCRIM BACK:** A double back made of light, coarse fabric, cemented to a jute or kraftcord or synthetic back in tufted construction. (See Double Back). (CRI)
- SCULPTURED:** In carpet, this refers to a type of pattern formed when certain tufts are eliminated or pile yarns are drawn tightly to the back to form a specific design in the face of the carpet. The pattern resulting simulates the effect of hand carving. (CRI)
- SEAMS:** See Back Seams; Face Seams; Cross Seams; Side Seams. (CRI)
- SEAMLESS:** Without seams. (CRI)
- SECONDARY BACKING:** The extra layer of material laminated to the underside of the carpet for additional dimensional stability and body. Usually latex foam, jute, polypropylene or vinyl. (CRI)
- SECONDS:** Carpets or rugs rejected for having certain imperfections, flaws or deviations of weave and marked as "seconds" or "imperfect" by the manufacturer. (CRI)
- SELF-TONE:** A pattern of two or more shades of the same color. When two shades are used in a pattern or design, it is called "two-tone". (CRI)
- SELVAGE:** The edge of a carpet so finished that it will not ravel or require binding or hemming. (CRI)
- SERGING:** Also known as "oversewing," this is a method of finishing the edge of carpet. It is customary to serge the side and bind the end. (CRI)
- SERRATED or UNDULATING or WAVY WIRES:** A wire cut high and low to a plan and combined in a group to rotate in sequence to create a desired pattern in the surface of the carpet. (CRI)
- SET or DROP-MATCH:** In a set-match carpet pattern, the figure matches straight across on each side of the narrow carpet width; in a drop-match, the figure matches midway of the design; in a quarter drop-match, the figure matches one-quarter of the length of the repeat on the opposite side. (CRI)
- SETTING:** The process of preparing a pattern for the Axminster loom by winding the specified colored yarns on a spool in sequence required for weaving. (CRI)
- SEWING POLE:** Any piece of wood or other material, more or less rounded, over which carpet may be laid in order to facilitate sewing and other related operations. Most installers prefer a wooden pole about 4 inches in diameter that has been slightly flattened on one side. (CRI)
- SHADING:** An apparent change of color in carpet pile caused as light is reflected in different ways when pile fibers are bent; not a defect, but a characteristic especially of cut pile fabrics, including upholstery and clothing. (CRI)
- SHAG:** A low density type of carpet of cut and/or loop pile construction wherein the pile surface texture has a random tumbled appearance. This effect is created in use by the random layover of the pile yarn in all directions, as distinguished from the normal upright position of the pile in plush carpet. (CRI)
- SHEARING:** The process in manufacture in which the fabric is drawn under revolving cutting blades as in a lawn mower, in order to produce a smooth face of the fabric. (CRI)
- SHED:** The "v"-shaped opening behind the race plate that is formed by warp ends as they are raised and lowered by their respective harnesses for the insertion of the filling. (CRI)
- SHEEN-TYPE:** A rug having a high luster, usually produced by chemical washing. (CRI)
- SHOOTING or SPROUTING:** Individual strands of yarn protruding above the surface of the pile. These may be extra long ends of tufts which were not sheared at the mill, pieces of backing material which have risen above the surface, loose ends which were not secured firmly, or occasionally the untwisting of the tightly twisted tufts in a twist weave carpet. This condition of sprouting or shooting does not mean that the fabric is coming apart, for it does no damage. It is only necessary to clip or shear these loose ends even with pile surface. The sprouting yarns should not be pulled out. (CRI)
- SHORT ROLL:** An unbound cut of carpet generally described in the carpet industry as being over 21 feet in length, but under 30 feet, by the width of the roll from which it was cut. (CRI)
- SHOT:** The number of weft yarns in relation to each row of pile tufts crosswise in the loom. A 2-shot fabric is one having two weft yarns for each row of pile tufts, a 3-shot fabric has three weft yarns for each row of tufts. (CRI)
- SHRINKAGE:** The contraction of fabrics after wetting and drying. (CRI)

- SHUTTLE:** In weaving, a boat-shaped, wooden instrument which holds the bobbin from which the weft yarns unwind as the shuttle passes through the warp shed. (CRI)
- SHUTTLE BOX:** The receivers on each side of the loom that catch the shuttle as it comes through the shed of the loom. (CRI)
- SIDE SEAMS:** Seams running the length of the carpet, adding to the width. Also called length seams. (CRI)
- SIZING:** Operation consisting of applying starch, gelatin, oil, wax or any other ingredient onto yarn to aid the process of fabrication or to control fabric characteristics. Warp sizing is usually referred to as slashing. (CRI)
- SKEIN DYED YARN:** Surface yarn spun from white staple and dyed in kettles or vats by immersion in skein form. (CRI)
- SLIVER:** A loose, soft, untwisted, strand or rope of fibers. (CRI)
- SMASH:** Breakage of a large number of warp ends because of some irregularity in the loom function. (CRI)
- SMYRNA:** A reversible, double-ply rug, woven from chenille fur strips without the backing characteristic of the chenille weave. The binding yarns are wool, cotton, jute or paper. (CRI)
- SOIL RETARDANT:** Agent applied to carpet pile yarns to resist soiling. (CRI)
- SOLUTION DYED:** Dye or colored pigments added to solution before extrusion of synthetic filaments. (CRI)
- SPACE DYED:** A special machine applies two or more colors to the yarn at predetermined intervals prior to tufting. (CRI)
- SPECIFIC GRAVITY:** Ratio of the weight of a given volume of the fiber to an equal volume of water taken as standard at stated temperatures. (CRI)
- SPIKE ROLL:** A spiked cylinder at the front of the loom that controls the number of rows per inch in the carpet by regulating the speed with which it advances the cloth. (CRI)
- SPINNING:** (1) Chemical Spinning: The process of producing manmade fibers, including the extrusion of the spinning liquid through a spinneret into a coagulating medium and the winding of the filaments onto bobbins or in cake form. (2) Mechanical Spinning: Twisting together and drawing out short fibers into continuous strands of yarn. (CRI)
- SPLUSH:** A term used to describe a semi-dense cut pile carpet, about halfway in appearance between a shag and a plush. The tufts lay less irregularly than a shag, but not as regular as a plush. (CRI)
- SPONGE CUSHION:** A carpet cushion made of chemically blown sponge, including both waffle or flat surfaces. (CRI)
- SPOOL:** (1) A cylinder with end flanges on which yarn is wound. (2) Axminster--a flanged interlocking ended cylinder used in "setting" on which pile yarn is wound in a predetermined sequence to make a pattern. (CRI)
- SPROUTING:** Protrusion of individual tuft or yarn ends above the surface pile level of carpet but may be clipped off with scissors level with the pile surface. (CRI)
- SPUN DYED (Mass Pigmented, Dope Dyed):** Descriptive of colored manmade fibers in which the coloring matter is incorporated in the substrate before extrusion as filament. (CRI)
- STABILIZING:** Treating a fabric so that it will not shrink or stretch more than a certain percentage. (CRI)
- STAIN:** The result of a foam substance being deposited on a carpet with no success in removal. (CRI)
- STANDING WIRE:** A term applied to pile forming wires that are fixed and extend through the reed. The height of the wire controls the height of the pile ends. (CRI)
- STAPLE:** Fiber in the natural, unprocessed state, usually in short lengths, which must be spun or twisted into yarn, as opposed to continuous filament. (CRI)
- STAPLE FIBER:** The short lengths into which filament yarns are cut to enable them to be spun on conventional spinning machinery. (CRI)
- STAPLE NYLON:** Nylon composed of specially engineered fibers cut into short staple for spinning yarns. (CRI)
- STATIC SHOCK:** The discomfort experienced by a person touching a conductive object and grounding to earth a static charge accumulated in the body by external friction. (CRI)
- STAY TACKING:** Temporary tacking of the carpet to hold the stretch. (CRI)
- STEP RETURN:** A bottom step, the nosing of which extends out considerably over the riser. It is frequently wider than the rest of the stairs, and is usually curved at the ends. Known also as a bullnose. (CRI)
- STIFFNESS:** Ability of a fiber or fabric to resist bending. (CRI)
- STITCHES:** The number of lengthwise yarn tufts in one inch of tufted carpet. (CRI)

STITCH LENGTH: The length of yarn from which a stitch is made. (CRI)

STOCK DYED YARN: Surface yarn spun from fibers that have already been dyed in staple form in large quantities. Compare Skein dyed yarn. (CRI)

STOP MARKS: A mark across the width of tufted carpet caused by off-standard feed relationship of either yarn or cloth feed or both on the start up on the machine. (CRI)

STREAK: A discoloration extended as an irregular stripe in the carpet. (CRI)

STRETCH: The lengthening of a filament, yarn, or fabric when stress is applied. (CRI)

STRIA or STRIPED: A striped effect obtained by twisting loosely two strands of one shade of yarn with one strand of a lighter or darker shade. The single yarn appears like irregular stripes. (CRI)

STUFFERS: Extra yarns running lengthwise through a woven fabric to increase weight and strength. (CRI)

SWATCH: Small piece of fabric used as a representative sample of the goods. (CRI)

TABBY WEAVE: A type of weaving used to give a staggered diagonal pattern across the weft yarns. Most commonly used in loomed carpet construction. (CRI)

TABLET TEST: Standard testing method for carpet flammability using methenamine reagent tablet for ignition, under controlled conditions. Sometimes referred to as "pill test". (CRI)

TAK DYEING: A process in which dye is applied over a continuous dyed fabric by a controlled "sprinkle" technique. (CRI)

TAKE UP (Also Crimp): The difference in distance between two points of a yarn as it lies in the fabric and the same two points when the yarn has been removed and straightened, expressed as a percent of the extended length. Similar to extended length used in tufting except that extended length is linear and the base is one inch of carpet. (CRI)

$$\frac{\text{Extended Length} - \text{Woven Length} \times 100}{\text{Extended Length}} = \% \text{ Take Up}$$

TAKE UP ROLL: Refers to the shaft that winds up the cloth after it leaves the "spike roll". (CRI)

TAPESTRY: A term formerly, but now rarely, used to describe a looped pile fabric woven on the velvet loom. (CRI)

TEMPLATE: A pattern, generally of paper or cardboard for shaping carpet to be cut. (CRI)

TENACITY: Stress applied to produce a particular elongation in a fiber. The breaking tenacity is the stress required to elongate a fiber to the breaking point. (CRI)

TENSILE STRENGTH: Breaking strain of yarns or fabrics. High tensile strength means strong yarns of fabrics. (CRI)

TEXTURE: A surface effect obtained by using different heights of pile or two or more forms of yarn, or by alternating the round and cut pile wires, by "brocade" engraving, simulated or actual carving or shaving with an electric razor, or other special treatment of the design, to give added interest beyond that provided by the woven design or tones. (CRI)

THERMAL CONDUCTIVITY: The measurement of heat flow through a material. (CRI)

THICK and THIN YARNS: Specialty yarns of varying thickness. (CRI)

THREADING: (1) The process of drawing the yarn ends through the tube frame which prepares pile spools for the Axminster loom. (2) Same as "drawing in". (CRI)

THREE-QUARTER CARPET: The term used in referring to a fabric woven 27 inches in width (or 3/4 of the standard yarn). It is a carryover from the early days of carpet weaving when the European "ell" was the standard width for weaving carpet strips. Since an ell is equivalent to 27 inches and since the U.S. standard measure is the yard, the term 3/4 carpet was coined. (CRI)

THRESHOLD: The raised board beneath a door. Also known as sill or saddle. (CRI)

TIMING: The proper relationship of various actions and movements in the loom and the tufting machines. (CRI)

TIP SHEARING: Texture pattern created in the same way as random shearing, but generally less definite than random sheared. (CRI)

TONE ON TONE: A carpet pattern made by using two or more shades of the same hue. (CRI)

TOP COLORS: Colors of the yarn used to form the design, as distinguished from ground color. (CRI)

TOTAL WEIGHT: Weight per square yard of the total carpet pile, yarn, primary and secondary backings and coatings. (CRI)

TRAFFIC: The passing to-and-fro of persons with special reference to carpet wear resulting therefrom. (CRI)

TREAD: The horizontal part of a step on which the foot treads. (CRI)

TUBE FRAMES. A device on the Axminster loom consisting of a base member on which are mounted supports to receive pile yarn spools, guide tubes through which pile ends are drawn, a friction device to provide tension while the spool is unrolling and catches to hold the assembly on an endless chain. (CRI)

TUFT BIND: The force required to pull a tuft from a cut pile floor covering or to pull free one leg of a loop from a looped pile floor covering. (CRI)

TUFTED CARPET: Carpet or rug fabric that is not woven in the usual manner, but formed by the insertion of thousands of needles that punch tufts through a fabric backing on the principle of the sewing machine. (CRI)

TUFTING: Process of stitching fabric, leaving the stitches long enough to be cut off or left as loops. (CRI)

TUFTS: The cut or uncut loops of a pile fabric. (CRI)

TUNNEL TEST: A test method measuring flame spread, fuel contribution and smoke density of building materials. Reference--ASTM E-84. (CRI)

TWIST: The number of turns about its axis per inch of yarn. (TPI)

TWIST CARPET: Surface texture created with tightly-twisted yarns, resulting in a nubby or pebbly effect. (CRI)

TWO-TONES: A design or pattern obtained by using two shades of the same color. (CRI)

UNDERLAY: See Carpet Cushion. (CRI)

VAT DYES: Dyes formed in fabrics by oxidation and precipitation of the original dye liquor; e.g., indigo. Vat dyeing refers to a kind of dye rather than a method of dyeing. Raw stock dyeing, skein dyeing, or solution dyeing can be performed with vat dyes. (CRI)

VELVET CARPET: A woven carpet made on a cam loom very similar to the Wilton loom, except that there is no Jacquard motion to control when each individual yarn rises to the surface. Today most velvet carpet produced is a level loop fabric in tweed or plain colors. Some cut pile plush or splush fabrics are also produced. (CRI)

VELVET FINISH: A term used to describe the surface of a dense cut pile carpet, produced usually on a tufting machine or velvet loom. See also Plush, Splush and Saxony Finish. (CRI)

VINYL: A synthetic carpet back which may be applied in either a "hard" or cushioned form. (CRI)

VINYL FOAM CUSHIONING: A type of carpet cushioning material made from the combination of solids and liquids. (CRI)

WARP: A series of threads or yarns (usually delivered from a beam) running lengthwise in the carpet. Usually consists of chain, stuffer and pile warp. (CRI)

WARP PILE: An extra set of warp yarns woven into a fabric to form an upright pile. (CRI)

WASTE: Fiber and yarn by-products created in the manufacturing and processing of fibers or yarns. (CRI)

WEAVING: Surface and backing yarns are interlaced or woven together, in one operation. Several types of looms are employed. (See Axminster, Wilton, Velvet). (CRI)

WEFT OR WOOF: The threads running across a woven fabric from selvage edge to selvage edge, binding in the pile and weaving in the warp threads. (CRI)

WEIGHTING: Finishing materials applied to a fabric to give increased weight. (CRI)

WIDTH: Distance between the two selvages of a cloth. (CRI)

WILTON: Named after a town in England. This carpet weaving process employs a Jacquard pattern making mechanism, operating on the same principle as player piano rolls, with punched pattern cards determining pile height and color selection; most often used for patterns and multilevel textures. (CRI)

WIRES: Metal strips inserted in the weaving shed in Wilton and velvet weaves so that the surface yarns are bound over them, forming a loop of the proper height, in round wire construction, loops are left uncut; in cut pile, flat wires with knife edges are used, cutting loops as wire is withdrawn. (CRI)

WIRE HEIGHT: The part on which the wires slide and wire hopper travels on a broad velvet or Wilton loom. (CRI)

WOOLEN YARN: A rather soft, bulky yarn spun from both long and short wool fibers not combed out straight but lying in all directions so that they interlock and produce a felt-like texture. (CRI)

WORSTED YARN: Made of long staple carpet fiber and combed to parallel the fiber and remove the extremely short fibers. (CRI)

WOVEN BACKING: Backing produced by a weaving process using natural fiber, such as jute, cotton duck or synthetic yarns. (CRI)

YARD GOODS: (or Yardage) Cloth sold by the running yard as distinguished from manmade garments. (CRI)

YARN: A continuous strand for tufting, weaving or knitting; (1) Continuous filament yarn; Yarn formed into a continuous strand from two or more continuous filaments. (2) Spun yarn Yarn formed from staple by spinning or twisting into a single continuous strand or yarn. (CRI)

YARN DYEING: Spun fiber or yarn dyed before carpet is manufactured. (CRI)

YARN PLY: The number of strands of single yarns twisted together to form one carpet yarn. (CRI)

YARN SIZE: Refer to Count. (CRI)

YARN WEIGHT: Number of yards of yarn per unit of weight. (CRI)

For terms relating to this Section, see terms
in:

- Section 09400 - Terrazzo
- Section 09900 - Painting

- FLOOR TREATMENT: Metallic-type static-disseminating and spark-resistant finish.
(CSI)

For other terms relating to this Section, see terms in:

- Section 09400 - Terrazzo
- Section 09700 - Special Flooring
- Section 09800 - Special Coatings
- Section 09900 - Painting

- ABRASION RESISTANCE:** Resistance to being worn away by rubbing or friction; related more to toughness than to hardness. A necessary quality for floor finishes, enamels and varnishes. (NPCA)
- ABRASIVE:** A material used for wearing away a surface by rubbing. Examples of abrasives are: powdered pumice, rottenstone, silica, sandpaper, steel wool. These materials are used for smoothing rough surfaces before painting. They also are used for producing "rubbed" finishes on fine furniture and woodwork. (PDCA)
- ABSORPTION:** Process of soaking up, or assimilation of one substance by another. (PDCA)
- ACCELERATOR:** Catalyst; a material which accelerates the hardening of certain coatings. (PDCA)
- ACCELERATED WEATHERING:** Manmade methods of rapidly duplicating or reproducing actual weather conditions. (PDCA)
- ACOUSTIC PAINT:** Paint which absorbs or deadens sound. (PDCA)
- ACRYLIC:** Synthetic resin similar to that used in transparent, glass-like plastics. Widely used as a latex and as a solvent-thinned coating which is often described as an acrylic lacquer. These are film-forming substances made by polymerizing a monomer such as ethyl acrylate. They are similar in performance to the vinyl resins except they show excellent ultra-violet resistance and maintain their flexibility through a wide range of conditions. Also obtainable as an emulsion and is used extensively in exterior latex paints. (PDCA)
- ACTIVATOR:** Catalyst or curing agent. (PDCA)
- ADHESION:** The property which makes a paint film stick to a surface. (PDCA)
- ADSORPTION:** Process of attraction to a surface; attachment; the retention of foreign molecules on the surface of a substance. (PDCA)
- ADULTERATION:** The substitution of inferior materials for those accepted as standard. (PDCA)
- AGITATOR:** Stirrer; mixer. (PDCA)
- AIR DRY:** The ability of a paint or coating to dry under normal conditions of temperature and humidity. (NPCA)
- AIR ADJUSTING VALVE:** Spray gun valve controlling input air. (PDCA)
- AIR BUBBLE:** Bubble in paint film caused by entrapped air. (PDCA)
- AIR CAP or AIR NOZZLE:** Perforated housing for atomizing air at head of spray gun. (PDCA)
- AIR DRY:** To dry a coating under ordinary room conditions; i.e., 50 to 80 degrees Fahrenheit with 40 to 60% relative humidity. (PDCA)
- AIR ENTRAPMENT:** Inclusion of air bubbles in paint film. (PDCA)
- AIR HOSE:** Hose of air supply quality, usually red. (PDCA)
- AIR JET (BLAST CLEANING):** Type of blast cleaning gun in which the abrasive is conveyed to the gun by partial vacuum. (PDCA)
- AIR MANIFOLD:** Common air supply chamber for several lines. (PDCA)
- AIR TRANSFORMER:** Device for controlled reduction in air pressure. (PDCA)
- AIR VALVE:** Control valve in air line system. (PDCA)
- AIR VOLUME:** Quantity of air in cubic feet (usually per minute) at atmospheric pressure. (PDCA)
- AIRLESS SPRAY:** The principal here is to increase the fluid pressure of paint by means of a pump. When this pressure is released to the spray nozzle, atomization occurs. Advantages over air spray include higher film build, and little or no overspray. (PDCA)
- ALCOHOL:** A flammable solvent; alcohols commonly used in painting are ethyl alcohol (ethanol) and methyl alcohol (methanol, wood alcohol). (PDCA)
- ALCOHOL RESISTING:** Showing on damage when in contact with alcohol. (PDCA)
- ALIPHATIC:** The name usually applied to petroleum products derived from a paraffin base crude oil, and sometimes called "straight chain hydrocarbons." Among the typical aliphatic hydrocarbons are gasoline, mineral spirits, naphtha and kerosene. (PDCA)
- ALKYD:** A synthetic resin which is a condensation product involving a polybasic acid, such as phthalic, maleic, or succinic, and a polyhydric alcohol such as glycerine and the glycols, usually with addition of a modifying agent. They are used in paints, varnishes and lacquers. (PDCA)
- ALLIGATORING:** This term is used to refer to a painted surface on which cracks, resembling the hide of an alligator, have formed. Common cause of this condition is the application of thick films which prevent the under surface from becoming thoroughly dry and hard, or from drying the paint in poorly ventilated rooms. (PDCA)
- ALUMINUM PAINT:** A mixture of finely divided aluminum particles, in flake form, combined with a vehicle such as thin varnish. (PDCA)

- AMBIENT TEMPERATURE:** Room temperature or temperature of surroundings. (PDCA)
- AMIDES:** Curing agent combined with epoxy resins. (PDCA)
- AMINES:** Curing agent combined with epoxy resins. (PDCA)
- ANALINE COLORS:** A term loosely used to indicate coal tar dyes or derivatives. (PDCA)
- ANCHOR PATTERN:** Profile, surface roughness. (PDCA)
- ANCHORAGE:** The mechanical effect of paint "keying" itself into the surface of wood or other materials to which it has been applied. This effect is similar to the "clinch" of plaster anchorage between the lath. (PDCA)
- ANGLE BLASTING:** Blast cleaning at angles less than 90 degrees. (PDCA)
- ANGLE OF DEGREE (AIRLESS SPRAY CAP):** Orifice angle; controls width of spray, pattern angle. (PDCA)
- ANHYDROUS:** Free from moisture. (PDCA)
- ANTICORROSIVE PAINT:** Metal paint designed to inhibit corrosion and rusting. Applied directly to the metal, usually as a primer for finish coats. (PDCA)
- ANTI-FOULING PAINT:** The final coat of paint applied to the hull of a ship below the water line. Contains poisonous substances, such as red or yellow mercuric oxide, red cuprous oxide, or metallic soaps containing mercury, copper or the like. Its purpose is to prevent the growth of marine life, such as barnacles, which greatly retard the speed of a ship. (PDCA)
- ANTIQUÉ FINISH:** A finish usually applied to furniture to give the appearance of age. (PDCA)
- APPLICATOR:** One who applies; tool for applying. (PDCA)
- APPRENTICE PAINTER:** One engaged in learning the painting trade who is covered by a written agreement with an employer, association of employers or other responsible agency. Such an agreement provides for a certain number of years of reasonably continuous employment and for participation in an approved program of training in related technical and general subjects. (PDCA)
- ARCING:** Swingang spray gun away from perpendicular. (PDCA)
- ARCHITECTURAL ENAMEL:** An enamel designed for use on interior trim. May be gloss, semi-gloss, satin or eggshell. (PDCA)
- AROMATIC:** Refers to solvents such as xylene and toluol which possess a good to high solvent powder. (PDCA)
- ASPHALT:** Black solid bitumen found naturally. Also the residue from distillation of petroleum. (PDCA)
- ASPHALT VARNISH:** A mixture of asphalt and a drying oil. Often used where high acid resistance is necessary. (PDCA)
- ATOMIZE:** Break stream into small particles. (PDCA)
- BACK PRIMING:** Applying a coat of paint to the back of woodwork and exterior siding to prevent moisture from entering the wood and causing the grain to swell. (PDCA)
- BAKING FINISHES:** Baking at elevated temperatures improves certain types of coatings used on metal articles, such as automobiles and refrigerators, etc. Baking may be done in an oven, under infrared lamps, or by induction heating according to the demands of shape, space and other requirements. The article that is coated must, of course, be able to withstand the temperature required for the proper baking of the finish. Baking is usually employed to speed drying and step up production. (PDCA)
- BARRIER COATING:** Shielding or blocking coating or film. (PDCA)
- BENZENE:** Sometimes called Benzol. Often confused with Benzine due to similarity in pronunciation. Benzene is a very powerful solvent for many materials. Its use is restricted, however, due to its toxicity and also due to the fact that it is a fire hazard. Its use is generally restricted to industrial finishes for spray application. (PDCA)
- BENZINE:** A highly volatile petroleum product often used as a lacquer diluent. Highly flammable and a fire hazard both in shipping and storage and when used in the home by an inexperienced person. It has low solvent power, and is fast evaporating. (PDCA)
- BENZOL:** See Benzene. (PDCA)
- BINDER:** The film-forming ingredient in paint that binds the pigment particles together. (PDCA)
- BITUMASTIC:** A protective coating used primarily for waterproofing. It is made from specially refined coal tar pitch and fillers. (PDCA)
- BITUMEN:** Originally asphalt. Now any mineral hydrocarbon, but usually black pitchy material. (PDCA)
- BLAST ANGLE:** Angle of nozzle with reference to surface; also angle of particle propelled from rotating blast cleaning wheel with reference to surface. (PDCA)
- BLAST CLEANING:** Cleaning with propelled abrasives. (PDCA)

- BLEACHING:** Restoring discolored or stained wood to its normal color, or making it lighter by using a bleaching agent. (PDCA)
- BLEACHING AGENTS:** See "Bleaching", Some of the bleaching agents used are potassium permanganate, sodium bisulfite, sodium hypo-sulfite and hydrogen peroxide. (PDCA)
- BLEACHING LACQUER:** Bleaching lacquers are basic lacquers containing bleach solutions. They are used for lightening effects on dark woods. (PDCA)
- BLEEDING:** Migration of a dye or stain from stained wood or an undercoat into subsequent coats. This usually occurs as the result of solubility in the vehicle portion of the top coat. It can often be prevented or reduced by the application of an intermediate coat of shellac, aluminum paint or emulsion paint. For example, a white enamel applied over mahogany woodwork or over a brilliant red enamel will develop ink spots in a few weeks. (PDCA)
- BLEEDING STAIN:** Stain which works up or "bleeds" through succeeding coats of finishing materials. (PDCA)
- BLENDING:** The word "blending" is often used synonymously with the word "mixing". When two materials are blended, they are intimately mixed. (PDCA)
- BLISTERING:** Caused usually by applying paint to a surface containing excessive moisture. Blistering may also occur when moisture enters painted wood through some indirect source such as poor joints or careless carpentry work. It may also be caused by excessive heat. (PDCA)
- BLOCK COAT:** (Barrier coat or transition primer)-tie coat (adhesive) between noncompatible paints. (PDCA)
- BLOOM:** A fluorescence or deposit on a varnished or lacquered surface. Sometimes caused by a thin film of foreign material such as smoke, dust or oil, or by allowing the finish to dry in a poorly ventilated atmosphere. (PDCA)
- BLOWN OIL:** A vegetable or fish oil which has been thickened (bodied) by air blown through it while heated. (PDCA)
- BLOW TORCH:** An instrument used in burning off paint film. Should be used only by experienced operators. It is a dangerous fire hazard when used by amateurs. (PDCA)
- BLUSHING:** Cloudiness in the surface of a film. Usually caused by drying under improper conditions. Frequently used in the trade as synonymous with Blooming. (PDCA)
- BODIED OIL:** Made from alkali-refined linseed oil, which is kettle-bodied under heat. (PDCA)
- BODY:** Thickness of a fluid. Becoming obsolete. More suitable words are Consistency or Viscosity. (PDCA)
- BOILED OIL:** Drying oil treated with driers to shorten the drying time. (PDCA)
- BONDING:** Adhesion. (PDCA)
- BOXING:** Mixing paint by pouring from one bucket to another several times to assure most uniform consistency and smoothness. (PDCA)
- BREATHE:** The ability of a paint film to permit the passage of moisture vapor without causing blistering, cracking or peeling. (PDCA)
- BREATHING-TYPE COATING:** A coating which is sufficiently permeable to permit transmission of water vapor without detrimental effect to itself. (PDCA)
- BRIDGING:** The ability of a paint or enamel to cover a crack, a void, or other small gap. Bridging is closely related to the surface tension and plasticity of the product. (PDCA)
- BRIGHT BLAST:** White blast. (PDCA)
- BRONZING LIQUID:** A vehicle especially formulated for use as binder for aluminum or gold bronze powder. (PDCA)
- BRUSH:** A tool composed of bristles set into a handle; often used to apply coatings. Bristles may be synthetic (needed for water-thinned paints) or natural, such as hog hair. (NPCA)
- BRUSHABILITY:** The ability or ease with which a paint can be brushed. (NPCA)
- BRUSH MARKS:** Marks of the brush that remain in the dried paint film. (NPCA)
- BRUSH-OFF-BLAST:** See NACE No. 4 under the alphabetical listing of N. (PDCA)
- BUILD:** Apparent thickness or depth of the paint after drying. (NPCA)
- BURNISHING:** Shiny or lustrous spots on a paint surface caused by rubbing. (NPCA)
- BUTADIENE-STYRENE:** A synthetic latex similar to synthetic rubber and used in latex paints. (PDCA)
- CALCIMINE:** A water-thinned paint composed essentially of calcium carbonate or clay, and glue. Sometimes spelled kalsomine. (PDCA)
- CALCIUM CARBONATE (CALCITE, MARBLE DUST, CARBONATE OF LIME, ENGLISH WHITING, LIMESTONE CLIFFSTONE WHITING):** A white crystalline substance used as an extender pigment and as a putty ingredient. (PDCA)
- CALCIUM DRIERS:** Used widely in combination with other metal driers to convert paint to hard films. (PDCA)

- CALCIUM SULPHATE:** A white inert pigment which is practically free from color and opacity when ground in oil or grinding vehicle. It is used as an extender pigment. (PDCA)
- CARBON BLACK:** Jet-black, nonbleeding pigment, made by burning natural gas in insufficient supply of air. (PDCA)
- CARBONATE OF LEAD:** See White Lead. (PDCA)
- CARBON TETRACHLORIDE:** A nonflammable liquid with good solvent properties. (PDCA)
- CARMINE:** A brilliant red-like pigment with little hiding power. Must be used over a solid covering ground color of a similar shade. (PDCA)
- CASEIN:** The protein of milk and the principal constituent of cheese which is used extensively in the manufacture of water paints. (PDCA)
- CASTOR OIL:** Oil obtained from the castor bean. Nondrying. May be converted to a drying oil by chemical treatment, and is then known as dehydrated castor oil. (PDCA)
- CATALYST:** A reaction promoter. A substance present in minor amounts which induces, alters or accelerates a chemical reaction. A catalyst is unchanged by the reaction which it creates. (PDCA)
- CAT-EYE:** Hole or holiday shaped like a cat's eye; cratering. (PDCA)
- CAULKING COMPOUND:** A semi-drying or slow-drying plastic material used to seal joints or fill crevices around windows, chimneys, etc. Usually made in two grades, the gun type for application by use of a special gun; and the knife type for use with a putty knife. (PDCA)
- CELLULOSE:** An inert substance, the chief component of the cell walls of plants. Nitrocellulose, used extensively in making lacquer, is prepared from cellulose (cotton linters) by treatment with chemicals. (PDCA)
- CEMENT BASE PAINT:** A paint composed of Portland cement, lime, pigment and other modifying ingredients. Sold as dry powder. Mixed with water for application. (PDCA)
- CHALKING:** The decomposition of a paint film by lesion into a loose powder on the film surface. Mild chalking, accompanied by satisfactory color retention in tinted paint, is considered a desirable characteristic. Heavy chalking which washes off to leave an unprotected surface is highly undesirable. Before recoating a heavily chalked surface, all of the chalk should be removed. This is usually accomplished by vigorous brushing. (PDCA)
- CHECK:** Shallow crack of short length. (PDCA)
- CHECKING:** The formation of short narrow cracks in the surface of a paint film. These cracks may assume many patterns, but the usual ones resemble the print of a bird's foot or small squares. These cracks usually curl up and flake off as the paint film ages. (PDCA)
- CHINA CLAY:** A mineral used as extender pigment mostly aluminum silicate. (PDCA)
- CHINAWOOD OIL:** See Tung Oil. (PDCA)
- CHINESE BLUE:** A form of iron blue. (PDCA)
- CHINESE RED:** Chrome orange deep--a basic lead chromate. (PDCA)
- CHLORINATED RUBBER:** A synthetic resin made by chlorinating rubber under specified conditions. It is characterized by a neutral acidity, resistance to acid and alkalies, and its solubility in aromatic and aliphatic hydrocarbons and turpentine. It is insoluble in lacquer solvents and alcohol. (PDCA)
- CHROMA:** Intensity or depth of color. The quality of a color that relates to its concentration. (PDCA)
- CHROME GREEN:** A green pigment composed of iron blue and chrome yellow. Now restricted in use. (PDCA)
- CHROME ORANGE.** An orange pigment composed principally of basic lead chromate. Now restricted in use. (PDCA)
- CHROME YELLOW:** A yellow pigment composed primarily of lead chromate. Now restricted in use. (PDCA)
- CHROMIUM OXIDE GREEN:** A dark green pigment. Should not be confused with Chrome Green. (PDCA)
- CLEAR COATING:** A transparent protective and/or decorative film. (PDCA)
- CLOSE-GRAIN WOODS:** Woods such as birch, maple, etc., where the fibers are fine and are held closely together are called close-grain woods. (PDCA)
- CLOUDINESS:** When a nonpigmented material such as varnish, lacquer or oil is not clear and transparent, it is said to be "cloudy". This term is sometimes used in conjunction with blushing. (PDCA)
- COAL TAR ENAMEL:** A coal tar coating which dries to a hard, glossy film. Often used for protection of metal from corrosion. (PDCA)
- COAGULATE:** To change from a liquid to a thickened curdled state. (PDCA)
- COAL TAR-EPOXY PAINT:** Paint in which binder or vehicle is a combination of coal tar with epoxy resin. (PDCA)
- COAL TAR PITCH:** Refined, common pitch obtained as distillation residue from coal tar. (PDCA)

- COAL TAR SOLVENT:** Derived from the distillation of coal tar. Four main products for the paint industry are benzol, toluol, xy-lol and solvent naphtha. (PDCA)
- COATING:** A paint, varnish, lacquer or other finish used to create a protective and/or decorative layer. (NPCA)
- COHESION:** Property of holding self together. (PDCA)
- COLD WATER PAINT:** The paint in which the binder or vehicle portion is composed of casein, glue or other protein material dissolved in water. Usually employed on concrete, masonry or plaster surfaces. (PDCA)
- COLLOID:** A material compose of ultramicroscopic particles of a solid, liquid or a gas dispersed in a different medium which can be solid, liquid or a gas. A latex is a colloid composed of a dispersion of ultramicroscopic resin particles in a water medium. This is contrasted with a solution where the resin particles are soluble in the liquid and dissolved when combined with it. (PDCA)
- COLOR:** A term used variously to designate the colors of the spectrum; to denote the pigments used to produce various colors in paints, enamels and lacquers; and to express the act of applying color to an object by means of paint, lacquer, stain, etc. (PDCA)
- COLOR-IN-JAPAN:** A paste formed by mixing a color pigment with japan. Used principally for tinting. (PDCA)
- COLOR-IN-OIL:** A paste formed by mixing a color pigment in linseed or other vegetable oil. Used principally for tinting. (PDCA)
- COLORANT:** Concentrated color that can be added to paints to make specific colors. (NPCA)
- COLORFAST:** Fade resistant. (NPCA)
- COLOR RETENTION:** The ability of a film of paint or varnish to show little change in original color after being exposed to the weather. (PDCA)
- COLOR STABILITY:** A pigmented product is considered stable when it shows no color change in its wet shade. (PDCA)
- COLOR STRENGTH (PIGMENTS):** Relative strength or ability of pigments to color base material which is white or light in color. (PDCA)
- COLOR-UNIVERSAL:** Tinting colors similar to colors-in-oil except they are formulated to be compatible with a wide variety of solvent-thinned paints as well as water-thinned (latex) paints. Manufacturer's instructions are the best guides to compatibility with modern complex chemical coatings. (PDCA)
- COMMERCIAL BLAST:** See NACE NO. 3 under the alphabetical listing of N. (PDCA)
- COMMERCIALLY PURE (C.P.):** This term defines the purity of a substance on the basis of accepted commercial standards. (PDCA)
- COMPATIBILITY:** Ability to become blended with others. (PDCA)
- COMPLEMENTARY COLORS:** Two contrasting or opposite colors which combine the use of three primary colors. (PDCA)
- COMPOSITION:** Analysis; make-up (PDCA)
- CONCRETE:** Testing for Alkaline Material in: Concrete may be tested for evidence of alkali by applying a few drops of a 1% solution of phenolphthalein in alcohol to scattered spots on floor which have been dampened with water. If masonry is alkaline, drops turn red or purple. Another method is to dampen several pieces of red litmus paper and apply them at random over concrete floor. If litmus paper turns blue, alkali is present and neutralizing agent is essential before painting. (PDCA)
- CONVERTER:** That which causes change to different state; catalyst; curing agent; promoter. (PDCA)
- COOL COLORS:** Hues or colors in which blue predominates. The term "cool" is used because of the association with ice, water and sky. (PDCA)
- COPPER STAINING:** Usually caused by corrosion of copper screens, gutters, or downspouts washing down on painted surfaces. Can be prevented by painting or varnishing the copper. (PDCA)
- COVERAGE:** The area over which a given amount of paint will spread and hide the previous surface. (Usually expressed in square feet per gallon). (PDCA)
- CRACKING:** A form of paint failure in which cracks or breaks in the paint film extend through all coats down to the building material itself. This defect is caused by the use of paint which, because of its composition, becomes hard and brittle. (PDCA)
- CRAZING:** Hairline cracks in a paint film. (PDCA)
- CREEPING:** Also known as Crawling. When the paint finish as it is brushed on, runs together in little drops and does not wet the surfaces properly. (PDCA)
- CREOSOTE:** A product made from coal tar and used as a wood preservative. It should not be used on wood if painting over it is contemplated at a later time. (PDCA)
- CROSS-LINKING:** A particular method which chemicals unite to form films. (PDCA)

CROWS FOOTING: A surface appearance caused by the film drying in a gas-polluted atmosphere or in a draft. (PDCA)

CROW STEPS or CAT LADDERS: Long boards to which short cross pieces have been nailed at intervals to be used as steps. Used on a roof when staining or painting. (PDCA)

CURE: The chemical reaction process through which a coating transfers itself from the liquid state to the solid hard protective film. (PDCA)

CUSTOM COLOR: Special colors made by adding colorant to paint or by intermixing colors, which permits the retailer to match a color selected by the consumer. (NPCA)

CUTTING IN: An operation calling for most careful workmanship to keep a clean edge, as for example "cutting in" on a window sash with a sash tool. (PDCA)

DEAD FLAT: Having no gloss or sheen. (PDCA)

DECALCOMANIA: Paint films in the forms of pictures or other decorations which can be transferred from a temporary paper back ground to other surfaces. (PDCA)

DEGREASER: Chemical solution (compound) for grease removal. (PDCA)

DELAMINATION: Separation of layers. (PDCA)

DENATURED ALCOHOL: Grain or ethyl alcohol made unsuitable for beverage purposes by adding compounds of a poisonous nature. (PDCA)

DEW POINT: Temperature at which moisture condenses. (PDCA)

DIRT COLLECTION: The accumulation of dust, dirt and other foreign matter on the paint surface. (NPCA)

DIOXIDE: An oxide in which two atoms of oxygen are combined with one atom of the metal to form an oxide molecule. Example: titanium dioxide. (PDCA)

DISPERSION: Suspension of one compound in another, e.g., a material broken up into particles small enough to be suspended in a liquid by rapid mixing or agitation. (PDCA)

DRAG: Resistance of finishing material to the movement of the brush. (PDCA)

DRIERS: Compounds of certain metals which hasten the drying action of paints and varnishes. Most of these are solutions of metallic soaps in oils and volatile solvents, the most commonly used being lead, manganese and cobalt salts of organic acids. (PDCA)

DROP CLOTH: A large piece of fabric used by a journeyman painter to protect furniture, rugs and other articles from damage; also used over bushes and shrubs. (PDCA)

DROP (SCAFFOLD): One vertical descent of the scaffold. (PDCA)

DRYING OILS: Oils which are converted to solid films when exposed to oxygen in the air. Linseed, tung, perilla oils are the three principal vegetable oils in the drying class. Fish oil is the only animal oil of the drying class suited for use by the paint industry. (PDCA)

DRY DUST FREE: That stage of drying when particles of dust that settle upon the surface do not stick to the paint film. (NPCA)

DRY TACK FREE: That stage of drying when the paint no longer feels sticky or tacky when lightly touched. (NPCA)

DRY FILM THICKNESS: Depth of applied coating when dry, expressed in mils (1/1000 in.). (PDCA)

DRY SPRAY: Overspray or bounce back; sand finish due to spray particle being partially dried before reaching the surface. (PDCA)

DRY TO HANDLE: A film of paint or varnish is "dry to handle" when it is hardened sufficiently so that it may be handled without marring. (PDCA)

DRY TO SAND: That stage of drying when a paint film can be sanded without the sandpaper sticking or clogging. (NPCA)

DRY TO TOUCH: A film of paint is "dry to touch" when it is hardened sufficiently so that it may be touched lightly without any of it adhering to the fingers. (PDCA)

DRYING TIME: Time interval between application and final cure. (PDCA)

DURABILITY: The ability of paint to last or hold up well against destructive agents such as weather, sunlight, detergents, air pollution, abrasion, or marring. (NPCA)

EARTH PIGMENTS: Pigments found in earth such as ochre, umber, sienna, Van Dyke brown, chalk, barytes and graphite. (PDCA)

EFFLORESCENCE: A deposit of water soluble salts on the surface of masonry or plaster caused by the dissolving of salts present in masonry, migration of the solution to the surface and deposition of the salts when the water evaporates. (PDCA)

EGG SHELL LUSTRE: Lustre closely resembling that of an egg shell. (PDCA)

ELASTICITY: That property of a film which permits it to stretch or change in size and shape, returning to normal

- conditions without breaking or rupture during the distortion. The term elasticity should not be confused with toughness, tensile strength, or elongation which have different meanings. (PDCA)
- ELECTROSTATIC SPRAY:** Spraying in which electric charge attracts paint to surface. (PDCA)
- EMULSION:** A liquid preparation in which minute particles or globules of another liquid, not ordinarily miscible, remains in suspension. The suspension of very small particles of oil in water, or water in oil, by an emulsifying agent. An emulsion in which the dispersed particles are a solid is called a suspension, thus a latex cannot be called an emulsion in the strictest sense. It should be noted that the dispersed particles or globules are not soluble in the liquid, but remain discrete entities dispersed throughout the liquid. (PDCA)
- ENAMEL:** A special type of paint made with varnish or lacquer as the vehicle. The line of distinction between enamel and oil paints is very indefinite. An enamel is usually high in gloss and pigmented with high hiding pigments only. It has a low pigment volume. (PDCA)
- END SEAL:** Paint applied to the ends of boards in order to seal the pores to prevent the entrance of moisture which would cause decay and affect the paint film. (PDCA)
- EPOXY ESTER:** Epoxy modified oil; single package epoxy. (PDCA)
- EPOXY RESIN:** A resin derived from bisphenol. Used in varnishes and enamels similar to alkyls, and also in catalyzed coatings for industrial maintenance work. Outstanding chemical resistance and toughness are its chief features. (PDCA)
- EROSION:** The wearing away of the top coating of painted surface (e.g., by chalking) or by the abrasive action of windborne particles of grit, which may result in exposure of the underlying surface. (PDCA)
- ESTER GUM:** A synthetic resin made by a combination of rosin and glycerine. (PDCA)
- ETCH:** Surface preparation of metal by chemical means. (PDCA)
- ETHYL ALCOHOL:** Alcohol produced by the distillation of fermented grain or from petroleum sources. (PDCA)
- EVAPORATION RATE:** Rate of solvent release; evaporation rate, final-time interval for complete evaporation of all solvents; evaporation rate, initial-time interval during which low boiling solvent evaporates completely. (PDCA)
- EXTENDER:** A pigment of low hiding power. When used properly, extenders may contribute desirable properties to paint products, such as durability and porosity. (PDCA)
- FADING:** The loss of color by destruction of coloring matter through exposure to light, heat or other agents. (PDCA)
- FAILURE:** The term commonly used to describe the condition of a paint film at the end of its "useful life". All paints must eventually fail. The method of failure and the condition of the surface for repainting are the important factors. (PDCA)
- FALSE BODY:** Appearing to have a heavy consistency and given the impression that a thick film will be deposited upon drying, whereas the opposite results. (PDCA)
- FAN PATTERN:** Geometry of shape of spray pattern. (PDCA)
- FANNING (SPRAY GUN TECHNIQUE):** Arcing; moving the spray gun away from the work. (PDCA)
- FATTY:** A material which has bodied up with age and no longer dries as well as it originally did. (PDCA)
- FEATHERING:** (1) Flickering a gun at the end of each stroke; (2) Tapering edge. (PDCA)
- FEEL:** A journeyman's term for the working qualities of a paint. (PDCA)
- FERRIC OXIDE (IRON OXIDE):** A pigment of varying shades of red obtained in its natural form from mines in different parts of the world. Available in dry and paste form. Considerable amounts of synthetic iron oxide are now in use. (PDCA)
- FERROUS:** Pertaining to, or derived from iron. (PDCA)
- FIELD PAINTING:** The painting that is done to new or rebuilt structures at the place of erection either before or after erection. (PDCA)
- FILLER:** A pigment composition for filling the pores or irregularities in a surface preparatory to application of other finishes. (PDCA)
- FILM:** A layer or coat of material applied to a surface. (PDCA)
- FILM BUILD:** Dry thickness characteristics per coat. (PDCA)
- FILM FORMER:** A substance which forms a skin or membrane when dried from a liquid state. (PDCA)
- FILM INTEGRITY:** Degree of continuity of film. (PDCA)
- FILM THICKNESS:** The thickness of a coating on a surface measured in thousandths of an inch or mils. (PDCA)

- FILM THICKNESS GAUGE:** Device for measuring film thickness; both wet and dry gauges are available. (PDCA)
- FILTER:** Strainer; purifier. (PDCA)
- FINISH COAT:** The last applied film of coating in a painting system. (PDCA)
- RETARDANT PAINT:** A paint which will delay flaming or overheating of substrate. (PDCA)
- FISH OILS:** Comparatively inexpensive drying oils used extensively for cheap paints. They have good wetting properties but poor durability of weather resistance. They tend to become tacky in humid weather and are slow drying. The oil is obtained from marine animals such as menhaden, sardines and whales. (PDCA)
- FLAKING:** Detachment of small pieces of paint film. (PDCA)
- FLAME CLEANING:** Method of surface preparation of steel using flame. (PDCA)
- FLAMMABILITY:** Measure of the ability to burn. The use of this word is preferred to inflammability because of the difference of individual interpretation in associating the prefix "in" as negative. (PDCA)
- FLASHING:** The nonuniform appearance on walls or other surfaces in which a coating dries with spotty differences in color or gloss usually due to improper sealing of the porous surface. (PDCA)
- FLASH POINT:** The temperature at which a saturated vapor of thinner or a solvent will ignite with a spark. (PDCA)
- FLATTING AGENT:** An ingredient used in lacquers and varnishes to reduce the gloss or give a rubbed effect. (PDCA)
- FLATTING OIL:** A varnish-like composition made of heavy-bodied oil dissolved in a thinner, used to reduce paste paint to a flat paint. (PDCA)
- FLAT WALL PAINT:** A type of interior paint which is designed to produce a lusterless finish. (PDCA)
- FLEXIBILITY:** Ability to be bent without damage. (PDCA)
- FLINT PAPER:** Abrasive paper which is grayish-white in color. Inexpensive but short working life. (PDCA)
- FREE FLOWING:** A free flowing material is one that levels itself; thereby eliminating brush marks and other defects. (PDCA)
- FLOCCULATION:** The development of loosely bound solid aggregates in a pigment vehicle dispersion. (PDCA)
- FLOCK:** Soft, fluffy fibers recovered from wool, cotton, or rayon manufacture. They are sometimes blown upon an adhesive to produce novel finishes on walls or wall coverings. (PDCA)
- FLOCOATING:** Process of finishing by flowing finishing material on article by means of hose, allowing excess to drain into tank. (PDCA)
- FLOOR AND DECK ENAMEL:** An enamel designed for excellent abrasion resistance and smooth surfaces. Because it is rarely applied to vertical surfaces, it is made with the maximum of flow to insure leveling. (PDCA)
- FLOOR VARNISH:** A varnish made specifically for floors formulated to have good toughness, flexibility and abrasion or wear resistance. (PDCA)
- FLUID HOSE:** Specially designed hose for paint materials; usually black. (PDCA)
- FLUID NOZZLE:** Fluid tip with orifice; in a broader sense it means needle and tip combination of a spray gun. (PDCA)
- FLUID TIP:** Orifice in spray gun into which needle is seated. (PDCA)
- FLUORESCENT PAINT:** Luminous paint which glows only during activation by ultraviolet or "black" light. (PDCA)
- FOAMING:** Frothing. (PDCA)
- FOGGING:** Misting. (PDCA)
- FORCED DRYING:** Acceleration of drying by increasing the temperature above ambient temperature accompanied by forced air circulation. (PDCA)
- FOSSIL RESIN:** Any of the natural or earth type resins, which derive their characteristics through aging in the ground. (PDCA)
- FUNGICIDE:** A substance poisonous to fungi; retards or prevents fungi growth. (PDCA)
- FLOW:** The degree to which a wet paint film can flow out after application so as to eliminate brush marks and produce a uniform surface on drying. (PDCA)
- GALVANIZED IRON:** Sheet metal coated by dipping in hot zinc. (PDCA)
- GALVANIZED STEEL:** Steel plated in molten bath of zinc. (PDCA)
- GARNET PAPER:** Abrasive which is reddish in color, hard and sharp; comes from same source as semi-precious jewel by that name. More expensive than flint paper but lasts longer. (PDCA)
- GEL:** A gelatinous mass produced by slow change, physical action, or by addition of saline substances to solution of a colloid body. (PDCA)

- GENERIC:** Belonging to a particular family. (PDCA)
- GHOSTING:** A coating with a skippy appearance. See Skippy. (PDCA)
- GILDING:** Process of obtaining a finish by using metal leaf (metal hammered into very thin sheets). (PDCA)
- GILSONITE:** A black, coal-like substance used as gum resin in the manufacture of black asphaltum varnishes. (PDCA)
- GLAZING:** A process of applying transparent or translucent coatings over a painted surface to produce blended effects. (PDCA)
- GLOSS:** The luster, shininess or reflective ability of a surface, or the ability to reflect light regularly. It is based on the degree of optical smoothness of a surface. (PDCA)
- GLOSS METER:** Device for measuring sheen or lustre. (PDCA)
- GLOSS RETENTION:** Ability to retain original sheen. (PDCA)
- GLYCERINE:** A polyhydric alcohol used in manufacture of alkyd resins, ester gum and various resins for varnish making. (PDCA)
- BRAININESS:** Roughness of a protective film resembling grains of sand. (PDCA)
- GRAINING:** Simulating the grain of wood by means of specially prepared colors or stain and graining tools. (PDCA)
- GRAIN RAISING:** Swelling of the fibres of wood by water, producing an undesirable rough surface. (PDCA)
- GRAY BLAST:** Commercial blast. (PDCA)
- GRIT:** An abrasive obtained from slab and various other materials. (PDCA)
- GROUND COAT:** The base coat in an antiquing system that is applied before the graining colors, glazing or other finish coat. (NPCA)
- GUIDE COAT:** A coat similar to the finish color coat but of different color to assure good coverage. (PDCA)
- GUM:** A natural mucilaginous material derived from certain trees. Sometimes erroneously applied to resins. (PDCA)
- GUM TURPENTINE:** The oleoresinous material obtained by wounding the living pine tree and which, upon distillation, yields (gum) rosin and (gum) spirits of turpentine, as distinguished from wood rosin and steam distilled wood turpentine obtained from the stumps and limbs of dead trees. (PDCA)
- GUN DISTANCE:** Space between tip of spray gun and work. (PDCA)
- GYPSUM:** An extending pigment, not much used in oil paints, but used extensively in cement water paints. (PDCA)
- HAIR LINES:** Very narrow cracks in paint or varnish film. (PDCA)
- HAMMERED EFFECT FINISH:** So called because of its resemblance to hammered metal. Produced by incorporating an aluminum powder in vehicle which controls leafing and nonleafing effect to create unique designs. (PDCA)
- HARDNESS:** The ability of a paint film to resist denting, scratching, or mar-
ring. (NPCA)
- HARD OIL FINISH:** A varnish giving the effect of a rubbed-in-oil finish, but producing a hard surface. The term has gradually been extended to cover all sorts of architectural varnishes with a moderate luster. (PDCA)
- HAZING:** Clouding. (PDCA)
- HEAT RESISTING:** A coating showing no hazardous effects upon subjection to elevated temperatures. (PDCA)
- HEAVY BODIED:** A lacquer or similar material which has a thick consistency or high viscosity is termed to have a heavy body. (PDCA)
- HEAVY BODIED OIL:** A high viscosity oil. (PDCA)
- HIDING POWER:** The ability of a paint to hide the previous surface or color. (NPCA)
- HIGH BUILD:** Producing thick dry films per coat. (PDCA)
- HIGH FLASH NAPHTHA:** An aliphatic solvent having a high flash point 113°F, (45°C) (PDCA)
- HIGHLIGHTING:** Making certain parts of finished project appear lighter than other parts. (PDCA)
- HIPAC (HIGH PERFORMANCE ARCHITECTURAL COATINGS):** A generic name for what was formally known as "tile-like" coatings. Usually applied in a continuous high-build film that comes to a hard-glazed finish extremely resistant, depending on kind, to heat, moisture, abrasion, staining, chemicals, fungus growth and fire. Available in several types (epoxies, polyurethanes, epoxy polyesters). HIPAC's can be either clear or pigmented finishing materials generally consisting of two to four individual products marketed as one complete system. (PDCA)

- HOLD OUT:** Ability (or property) to prevent soaking into substrate. (PDCA)
- HOLIDAYS:** Areas of surface missed by the painter. (PDCA)
- HOLIDAY DETECTOR:** Device for detection of pinholes or holidays. See "Spark Testing." (PDCA)
- HOT SPOTS:** Spots in plaster due to improper mixing of the plaster. If paint is applied over them, a chemical reaction causes "burning", and this damages the paint film. Such spots must be specially primer-coated before painting. (PDCA)
- HOT SPRAY:** This is a technique recently developed which makes use of the fact that as a paint is heated the viscosity decreases sharply. Hence, thinners need not be added for application. By this method of application, thick even coats of paint may be applied. (PDCA)
- HOUSE PAINT OUTSIDE:** Paint designed for use on the exterior of buildings, fences and other surfaces exposed to the weather. (PDCA)
- HUE:** Used to designate the name of a color-- such as red, blue or orange. (PDCA)
- HUMIDITY:** Measure of moisture content; relative humidity is the ratio of the quantity of water vapor in the air compared to the greatest amount possible at the given temperature. Saturated air is said to have a humidity of 100 percent. (PDCA)
- HYDROCARBON:** Solvents derived from coal tar and petroleum and containing carbon and hydrogen. (PDCA)
- HYDROUS:** Containing water. (PDCA)
- IMPACT RESISTANCE:** A measure of resistance to a blow; ability to resist deformation from impact. (PDCA)
- INCOMPATIBILITY:** Inability to mix with or adhere to another material. (PDCA)
- INERT:** Chemically inactive, resistant to corrosion. (PDCA)
- INFRARED:** Invisible part of spectrum between radio waves and red portion of visible spectrum. (PDCA)
- INFLAMMABILITY:** Measure of ease of catching fire; ability to burn; use of the word flammability is preferred to inflammability due to the possible misinterpretation of the prefix "in" as a negative. (PDCA)
- INHIBITIVE PIGMENT:** One which retards corrosion process. (PDCA)
- INORGANIC:** Containing no carbon. (PDCA)
- INSULATING VARNISH:** A varnish specifically designed for electrical insulation of wires, coils, etc. (PDCA)
- INTENSE COLOR:** A strong, vivid color. (PDCA)
- INTERCOAT CONTAMINATION:** Presence of foreign matter between successive coats. (PDCA)
- INTERCOAT ADHESION:** The adhesion between two coats of paint. (NPCA)
- INTERIOR:** The inside surfaces of a structure. (NPCA)
- INTERMEDIATE COAT:** Middle coat; guide coat. (PDCA)
- INTERNAL MIX:** A spray gun in which the fluid and air are combined before they leave the gun. (PDCA)
- INTUMESCE:** To form a voluminous char on ignition; foaming or swelling when exposed to flame. Characteristic of fire retardant coatings. (PDCA)
- IRON OXIDE:** Pigment available in three forms; red, brown and yellow, and of high iron content. (PDCA)
- JAPAN:** A type of varnish. (PDCA)
- JAPAN COLOR:** Color ground in japan varnish. (PDCA)
- JAPAN DRIER:** A resinate-base liquid drier. (PDCA)
- JOINT FINISHING SYSTEM:** Proprietary combinations of tape and compound with specific recommendations for application, number of coats, sanding, and special conditions. (PDCA)
- JOINT TAPE:** Either perforated, tapered edge continuous paper tape or fiber-glass mesh tape used to span and reinforce joints in gypsum wallboard surfaces. Applied with joint compound. (PDCA)
- JOURNEYMAN PAINTER:** One who has had full experience and schooling as an apprentice. (PDCA)
- KALSOMINE:** See "Calsomine". (PDCA)
- KAURI GUM:** A fossil copal found in New Zealand. It is soluble in alcohol, esters and ketones; insoluble in coal tar solvents, petroleum naphtha and turpentine. (PDCA)
- KB (KAURI-BUTANOL) VALUE:** Measure of solvent power. (PDCA)
- KEROSENE:** Also known as coal oil. A high boiling petroleum distillate with

- an average boiling range of 150° to 250°C. and is used in the formulation of baking enamels and flat wall paints. (PDCA)
- ETONE: Any one of the important group of organic compounds containing the bivalent ketone groups, such as acetone or dimethylketone. They are colorless volatile liquids or crystalline solids, such as camphor. (PDCA)
- KILN DRYING: Drying of wood, paint, varnish or lacquer in a room or compartment with heat, and humidity regulated. (PDCA)
- KREB UNITS: Units of viscosity. (PDCA)
- LAC: A natural resin secreted by insects which live on the sap of certain trees in Oriental countries. Base for shellac. (PDCA)
- LACQUER: A material of cellulose base. It dries by evaporation of the thinner or solvent and has a low solids content making it necessary to apply several coats for a good full finish. (PDCA)
- LAITANCE: Milky white deposit on new concrete. (PDCA)
- LAMPBLACK: A pigment consisting of finely ground carbon. (PDCA)
- LAP: To lay or place one coat so its edge extends over and covers the edge of a previous coat, causing an increased film thickness. (NPCA)
- LATEX: A synthetic resin used as base for water emulsion paints. In latex, pigment is in suspension whereas in rubber base paint the pigment is in solution. See "Rubber Resin". Examples are polyvinyl acetate, styrene butadiene, and acrylics, used as a base for water emulsion paints. (PDCA)
- LEACHING: The process of extraction of a soluble component from a mixture with an insoluble component by percolation of the mixture with a solvent, usually water. (PDCA)
- LEAD CARBONATE, BASIC: A type of White Lead. (PDCA)
- LEAD DRIER: A compound of lead and an organic acid for hastening the drying of paint. (PDCA)
- LEAD OXIDE: A combination of lead and oxygen, such as red lead. (PDCA)
- LEAD SULFATE, BASIC: A type of White Lead. (PDCA)
- LEADED ZINC: A mixture of zinc oxide and basic sulfate white lead. (PDCA)
- LEAFING: Action peculiar to aluminum paints, in which the flat flakes in the pigment overlap each other. (PDCA)
- LEVELING: Ability of a film to flow out free from ripples, pockmarks and brush marks after application. (NPCA)
- LIFTING: The softening and penetration of a previous film by solvents in the paint being applied over it, resulting in raising and wrinkling. (NPCA)
- LIGHTFASTNESS: See "Fading". (NPCA)
- LINSEED OIL: Obtained from the flaxseed, linseed oil is used in paints in larger quantities than any other oil and is considered the finest vehicle for exterior paints because of its excellent drying properties and durability. (PDCA)
- LITHARGE: Lead monoxide of brownish color used as a source of lead for driers and for red lead. (PDCA)
- LITHOPONE: A white pigment derived from barium sulphide and zinc sulphate formerly in wide use, now seldom used. (PDCA)
- LIVERING: An abnormal increase in the consistency of paint or enamel which results in a liver-like mass. (PDCA)
- LIQUID DRIERS: Solution of driers in paint thinners. (PDCA)
- LONG OIL VARNISH: One made with a relatively high proportion of oil to resin. Generally slower drying, tougher and more elastic than short oil varnishes, primarily intended for exterior use. (PDCA)
- LOW BOILING SOLVENT: A solvent with an initial boiling point below 302°F (150°C). (PDCA)
- LUMINOUS PAINTS: Coatings which emit light rather than just reflecting it. There are three classes: fluorescent which requires ultraviolet light to activate it; daylight fluorescent, which emits additional light from absorbed solar radiation; and phosphorescent, which continues to glow for some time after the external energy is removed. (PDCA)
- LUSTER: The gloss, shine or brightness of a finished surface. (PDCA)
- MAGNESIUM SILICATE: White extender pigment which adds "Fluffiness" to products in which it is used. Provides very little opacity. (PDCA)
- MAINTENANCE PAINTING: (1) Repair painting; any painting after the initial painting job; in a broader sense it includes painting of items installed during maintenance; (2) All painting except that done solely for aesthetics. (PDCA)
- MALEIC: A di-basic acid. Used primarily in alkyd varnishes and enamels to promote faster drying. Sometimes used as a wetting agent in pigment grinding. (PDCA)

- MARBLING:** Simulating the grain and texture of polished marble by means of finishing materials. (PDCA)
- MARINE VARNISHES:** Varnishes especially designed for immersion in water and exposure to marine atmosphere. (PDCA)
- MASKING:** Temporary covering of areas not to be painted. (NPCA)
- MASKING TAPE:** A strip of paper or cloth similar to adhesive tape which can easily be removed. It is used to protect small surfaces which the painter does not want to get smeared with paint. (PDCA)
- MASTIC:** A heavy-bodied pastelike coating of high build often applied with a trowel. (NPCA)
- MEDIUM VALUE:** Color midway between a dark color and a light color. (PDCA)
- (MFK) METHYL ETHYL KETONE:** A strong flammable organic solvent. (PDCA)
- MELAMINE RESIN:** A synthetic resin made from melamine and aldehyde. (PDCA)
- METALIZING:** The process of spraying with a metal. (PDCA)
- METALLICS:** A class of paints that include metal flakes. (PDCA)
- METALLIC SOAP:** Compound of fatty acids of the vegetable and animal oils with metals of other than the alkali metals. It has the property of being a drier, thickening agent and flattening agent. (PDCA)
- METHYL ALCOHOL:** Methyl alcohol (methanol, wood alcohol, Columbian spirits) is a mobile, toxic, flammable and volatile liquid of spiritous odor. (PDCA)
- MIL:** One thousandth of an inch, used by number of mils to designate the thickness of a coating on a surface. (PDCA)
- MILDEW RESISTANCE:** The ability of a coating to resist the growth of molds and mildew. Mildew is particularly prevalent in moist, humid, and warm climates. (NPCA)
- MILDEWCIDE:** See "fungicide". (NPCA)
- MILL SCALE:** The heavy oxide layer formed during hot fabrication or heat treatment of metals. Especially applied to iron and steel. (PDCA)
- MILL WHITE:** White paint with vehicle of varnish type, used to augment illumination on interior of industrial plants. (PDCA)
- MINERAL BLACK:** A natural black pigment based on graphite. (PDCA)
- MINERAL SPIRITS:** A petroleum-derived solvent used for thinning paint and similar to gasoline. The standard type has a boiling range of about 300-400°F. Odorless mineral spirits have been refined to remove some odorous constituents and boil somewhat higher. (PDCA)
- MISCIBLE:** Capable of mixing or blending uniformly. (PDCA)
- MISSES:** Holidays; skips; voids. (PDCA)
- MIST COAT:** Thin tack coat; thin adhesive coat. (PDCA)
- MOBILITY:** The degree to which a material flows. (PDCA)
- MONOCHROMATIC HARMONY:** Color harmony formed by using shades and tints of a single color. (PDCA)
- MONOMER:** Composed of single molecules; a basic chemical used to make polymers. (PDCA)
- MUD-CRACKING:** Irregular cracking of dried film, as in a dried mud puddle. (PDCA)
- MULTICOLOR:** A lacquer or oil base type paint, suspended in treated water, applicable by spray only, which deposits a film of dots that may include a number of different colors and dot sizes. (PDCA)
- MURIATIC ACID:** The commercial name for a dilute form of hydrochloric acid. (PDCA)
- MVT (MOISTURE VAPOR TRANSMISSION):** Moisture vapor transmission rate through a known membrane. (PDCA)
- NACE NO. 1 WHITE METAL BLAST CLEANED SURFACE FINISH:** This finish is defined as a surface with a gray-white, uniform metallic color, slightly roughened to form a suitable anchor pattern for coatings; this surface shall be free of all oil, grease, dirt, visible mill scale, rust corrosion products, oxides, paint or any other foreign matter; the surface shall have a color characteristic of the abrasive media used; photographic or other visual standards of surface preparation may be used to further define the surface. (PDCA)
- NACE NO. 2 NEAR-WHITE BLAST CLEANED SURFACE FINISH:** This finish is defined as one from which all oil, grease, dirt, mill scale, rust, corrosion products, oxides, paint, or other foreign matter have been removed from the surface except for very light shadows, very light streaks or slight discolorations; at least 95 percent of the surface shall have the appearance of surface blast cleaned to a white metal surface finish and the remainder shall be limited to the light discoloration mentioned above; photographic or other visual standards of surface preparation may be used to modify or further define the surface. (PDCA)

NACE NO. 3 COMMERCIAL BLAST CLEANED SURFACE FINISH: This finish is defined as one from which all oil, grease, dirt, rust scale, and foreign matter have been completely removed from the surface and all rust, mill scale, and old paint have been completely removed except for slight shadows, streaks or discolorations; if the surface is pitted, slight residues of rust or paint may be found in the bottom of pits; at least two-thirds of the surface area shall be free of all visual residues and the remainder shall be limited to light discoloration, slight staining or light residues mentioned above; photographic or other visual standards may be used to further define the surface. (PDCA)

NACE NO. 4 BRUSH-OFF BLAST CLEANED SURFACE FINISH: This finish is defined as one from which oil, grease, dirt, rust scale, loose mill scale, loose rust, and loose paint or coatings are removed completely, but light mill scale and tightly adhered rust, paint and coatings are permitted to remain provided they have been exposed to the abrasive blast pattern sufficiently to expose numerous flecks of the underlying metal fairly uniformly distributed over the entire surface; photographic or other visual standards of surface preparation may be used to further define the surface. (PDCA)

NAILHEAD RUSTING: Rust from iron nails that penetrates or bleeds through the coating and stains the surrounding area. (NPCA)

NAP: The length of fibers in a paint roller cover. (NPCA)

NAPHTHA: Hydrocarbons suitable for use as a paint thinner. (PDCA)

NATURAL RESINS: Bush resins made from the exudation of trees, or fossil resins taken from fossilized vegetable matter in the earth. Examples are damar, elemi and the copal resins. (PDCA)

NEAR-WHITE BLAST CLEANING: See NACE No. 2. (PDCA)

NITROCELLULOSE: A binder ingredient widely used in lacquer manufacturing. (PDCA)

NONDRYING OILS: An oil which does not of itself possess to a perceptible degree the power to take up oxygen from the air and lose its liquid characteristics. (PDCA)

NONFERROUS: Containing no iron. (PDCA)

NONFLAMMABLE: Incombustible, will not burn. (PDCA)

NONGRAIN RAISING STAIN: Wood stain which does not raise the grain of the wood. Made by dissolving dyes such as used in making water stains in special solvent, instead of water. (PDCA)

NONVOLATILE: The portion of a paint left after the solvent evaporates; sometimes called the solids content. (NPCA)

OCHRE: A natural yellow iron oxide mixed with siliceous matter, occurring in certain parts of the earth. (PDCA)

ODORLESS MINERAL SPIRITS: A solvent by-product of the aviation gasoline industry. (PDCA)

OFF-COLOR: A finishing material color which does not match the standard with which it is being compared. (PDCA)

OIL ABSORPTION: A measure of the ability of pigments to absorb oil. (PDCA)

OIL BASED PAINT: A paint which contains drying oils as the basic film forming ingredients, the drying process being achieved by oxidation. Minor alkyd modifications are sometimes made to speed up the characteristically slow dry of true oil based paints. (PDCA)

OIL COLORS: Colors ground to form of paste, in linseed oil. (PDCA)

OIL LENGTH: Oil length in varnish is measured by the oil in gallons per hundred pounds of resin. A long-oil varnish is tougher than a short-oil varnish. Rubbing varnish is a typical short-oil varnish and spar varnish is a typical long-oil varnish. (PDCA)

OIL RUBBING: The process of rubbing the dried film of finishing material with oil and an abrasive agent. (PDCA)

OIL SOLUBLE: Capable of being dissolved in oil. (PDCA)

OIL STAINS: There are two types, penetrating and nonpenetrating. Penetrating oil stains contain dyes and resins that penetrate into the surface; nonpenetrating oil stains contain larger amounts of pigments and are usually opaque or translucent. (NPCA)

OTICICA OIL: Oil secured from the oiticica nut, similar in properties to tung oil. (PDCA)

OLEORESINOUS: Said of a varnish made of oil and resin. (PDCA)

OPACITY: The property in a paint which enables it to hide and color a surface. (PDCA)

OPAQUE: Impervious to light; not transparent. (PDCA)

OPEN-GRAIN WOODS: Woods of loose, open formation with minute openings between the fibers, such as oak and walnut, are called "open-grain" woods. (PDCA)

ORANGE PEEL: The irregular surface of a film resembling the dimpled skin of an orange, caused by a failure of the film to flow out to a smooth level surface. (PDCA)

- ORANGE SHELLAC:** A shellac having a reddish brown to orange color. (PDCA)
- ORGANIC COLORS:** Pigments of animal, vegetable or dyestuff origins. (PDCA)
- ORGANIC:** Compounds produced by plants and animals. (PDCA)
- ORGANOSOL:** Film former containing resin plasticizer and solvent. (PDCA)
- ORIFICE:** Opening; hole. (PDCA)
- OVERATOMIZED:** Dispersed too finely by use of excessive atomizing air pressure. (PDCA)
- OVERCOAT:** Second coat; top coat. (PDCA)
- OVERLAP:** Portion (width) of fresh paint covered by next layer. (PDCA)
- OVERSPRAY:** Sprayed paint which did not hit target; waste. (PDCA)
- OXALIC ACID:** Type of wood bleach. (PDCA)
- OXIDATION:** Combination with oxygen; drying; burning; rusting. (PDCA)
- OXIDE:** The chemical compound formed by the reaction of oxygen on a metal such as lead, zinc, iron, titanium. Some oxides occur in nature and are mined, others are made synthetically. Examples: iron oxide, zinc oxide. (PDCA)
- OXIDIZE:** To unite with oxygen. (PDCA)
- PAINT:** A mixture or dispersion of pigments or powders in a liquid or vehicle. A general term referring to a pigmented liquid composition that is converted to an opaque, solid film after application as a thin layer. (PDCA)
- Emulsion Paint:** A paint, the vehicle of which is a stable dispersion of binder in water. The binder may be oil, oleoresinous varnish, resin or other emulsifiable binder.
- Latex Paint:** A class of emulsion paints in which the dispersed vehicle is a high molecular weight resin produced by emulsion polymerization.
- Oil Paint:** A paint that contains a drying oil or long oil varnish as the basic vehicle ingredient.
- Paste Paint:** A paint in which the nonvolatile ingredients are sufficiently concentrated to permit substantial reduction with thinner or vehicle before use.
- Water Paint:** A paint, the vehicle of which is water dispersion, water solution, or ingredients that react chemically with water.
- PAINT COATING:** Paint in position on a surface. (PDCA)
- PAINT FAILURE:** The loss of usefulness of the paint coating. (PDCA)
- PAINT PROGRAM:** Comprehensive painting plan. (PDCA)
- PAINT PROJECT:** Single paint job. (PDCA)
- PAINT REMOVER:** A compound which softens old paint or varnish and permits the scraping off of the loosened material. (PDCA)
- PAINT SYSTEM:** The complete number and type of coats comprising a paint job. In a broader sense, surface preparation, pretreatments, dry film thickness, and manner of application are included in the definition of a paint system. (PDCA)
- PAINTING:** All operations required to use paints properly. (PDCA)
- PAINTING MATERIALS:** All materials required to adequately paint a surface. (PDCA)
- PASS (SPRAY):** Motion of the spray gun in one direction only. (PDCA)
- PASSIVE:** Chemically inactive. (PDCA)
- PATCHING PLASTER:** A special plaster made for repairing plaster walls. (PDCA)
- PASTE:** A stiff plastic mixture of pigment and vehicle. (PDCA)
- PASTE FILLER:** A material of paste or semi-paste consistency used to smooth cast iron or fill the pores of wood. (PDCA)
- PASTE PAINT:** A paint in which a pigment is sufficiently concentrated to permit a substantial reduction with vehicle before use. (PDCA)
- PEELING:** Detachment of a paint film in relatively large pieces. Paint applied to a damp or greasy surface usually "peels". Sometimes it is due to moisture back of the painted surface. (PDCA)
- PENETRATING STAIN:** Oil-soluble dyes dissolved in solvents such as benzol. (PDCA)
- PERM:** Unit of permeance; grains of water vapor per hour per square foot per inch of mercury-water vapor pressure difference. (PDCA)
- pH:** A measure of alkalinity, acidity or neutrality in aqueous (watery) solutions. (PDCA)
- PHENOLIC:** A synthetic resin made by condensing phenol or a similar compound with formaldehyde. Phenolic varnishes are made by cooking phenolic resins with a drying oil and are widely used in spar varnishes and many enamels. Occasionally used as a catalyzed coating. (PDCA)

- PHOSPHATIZE:** Form a thin inert phosphate coating on surface usually by treatment with H_2PO_4 (phosphoric acid). (PDCA)
- PHOSPHORESCENT PAINT:** Luminous paint which emits light after the white light has been turned off. No phosphorus is used. (PDCA)
- PHTHALIC ANHYDRIDE:** A white powder made from naphthalene (same substance as moth balls) and used in the manufacture of alkyd resins. (PDCA)
- PICKLE:** A solution or process used to loosen or remove corrosion products such as scale and tarnish from a metal. (PDCA)
- "PICK UP SAGS":** When a too-heavy coating of paint has been applied and starts to sag or run down the surface, the painter brushes up through the sagging paint to level it off. (PDCA)
- PIGMENTS:** Paint ingredients mainly used to impart color and hiding power. (NPCA)
- PIGMENT VOLUME:** The percentage by volume of pigment in the nonvolatile portion of a paint, as calculated from bulking value and composition data. The letters "PV" are commonly used as an abbreviation. (PDCA)
- PINHOLING:** The formation of small holes or voids in a coating, usually caused by entrapped solvent in the film which pops through the partially dried surface of the coating. (PDCA)
- PITTING:** Formation of small usually shallow depressions or cavities. (PDCA)
- PLASTER OF PARIS:** A white powdery substance formed by calcining (heating) gypsum. When mixed with water, it forms a paste which soon sets. Originally brought from a suburb of Paris. (PDCA)
- PLASTICIZER:** An organic ester or resinous material of low vapor pressure, either liquid or semi-solid, used to blend with brittle materials to produce a lacquer or vehicle having good flexibility. (PDCA)
- PLASTISOL:** Film former containing resin and plasticizer with no solvents. (PDCA)
- POCK MARKS:** pits; craters. (PDCA)
- POLE-GUN:** Spray gun equipped with an extension tube. (PDCA)
- POLISHING:** Said of wall paints where shiny spots or surfaces have resulted from washing or wiping. (PDCA)
- POLYAMIDE:** Product used in making dripless paint. (PDCA)
- POLYESTER:** In the surface coatings industry, this usually refers to a catalyzed film former. The reactive substance is essentially styrene. Small amounts of peroxides are usually added to cause polymerization. Not often used as a paint film due to difficulty in application, poor adhesion and poor flexibility. (PDCA)
- POLYMER:** A high molecular weight material composed of a large number of repeating units of monomer linked together. Types of polymers are:
- Homopolymer:** A single type of monomer linked with itself. A common example would be polyethylene, where ethylene is the repeating unit.
- Copolymer:** Two different monomers linked alternately or spaced according to varying quantities used. An example is polystyrene-butadiene or polyvinyl-acetate-dibutylmaleate.
- Terpolymer:** Three polymers polymerized together. (PDCA)
- POLYMERIZATION:** The uniting of two or more molecules (as of an oil) to form one larger molecule. This effect takes place by oxidation when paints or varnishes dry to form a film, or when oil is heated in a kettle to make it heavier. Oils and resins are often heated together forming polymers. (PDCA)
- POLYURETHANE:** This is a film forming substance produced when an isocyanate reacts with other substances to produce an organic compound known as a urethane. It shows good chemical and excellent solvent resistance. Abrasion resistance is also outstanding. May be obtained as air drying, moisture-cured, catalyzed types. (PDCA)
- POLYVINYL ACETATE:** A synthetic resin largely used as the vehicle for many latex paints. Often referred to as PVA. (PDCA)
- POLYVINYL CHLORIDE (PVC):** A synthetic resin used in solvent type coatings and fluid bed coatings, produced by the polymerization of vinyl chloride; PVC is also used in emulsion (water) paints. (PDCA)
- POROSITY:** Degree of integrity or continuity. (PDCA)
- POT LIFE:** Time interval after mixing during which liquid material is usable with no difficulty. (PDCA)
- PRETREATMENT:** Chemical alteration of the surface to make it suitable for painting. (PDCA)
- PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE PAINTING:** Spot repair painting; touch up or full coats of paint before rusting starts. (PDCA)
- PRIMARY COLOR:** A primary color is a color which cannot be produced by mixing any other two colors. The three true primary

- colors are red, yellow and blue. See Book Six. (PDCA)
- PRIME IN THE SPOTS:** Apply a primer coat to spots where old paint has been scraped, brushed or burned off, shellacked or patched with new plaster. (PDCA)
- PRIMER:** The first coat in any painting operation. (PDCA)
- PRINTING:** The marring of a varnished surface with such things as hot dishes or alcoholic beverages. (PDCA)
- "PRINT FREE":** Paint sufficiently dry so that no imprint is left when something is pressed against it. (PDCA)
- PRODUCTION RATE:** Measurement of surface area cleaned or coated in one working day by one man. (PDCA)
- PROFILE:** Surface contour of a blast-cleaned surface as viewed from the edge; cross section of the surface. (PDCA)
- PROFILE DEPTH:** Average distance between tops of peaks and bottom of valleys on the surface. (PDCA)
- PROOF:** Indication of percentages of water and grain alcohol; a mixture which is 100 proof would be 50% water, 50% alcohol by volume. A mixture which is 120 proof would contain 60% alcohol. (PDCA)
- PROPRIETARY:** Available on open market under brand name. (PDCA)
- PROTECTIVE LIFE:** Interval of time during which a paint system protects substrate from deterioration. (PDCA)
- PUMICE STONE:** A stone of volcanic origin which is pulverized to produce a soft abrasive used extensively in rubbing finishing coats of fine wood finishes. (PDCA)
- PUTTY:** A dough-like mixture of pigment and oil (usually whiting and linseed oil--sometimes mixed with white lead). Used to set glass in window frames, fill nail holes and cracks. (PDCA)
- PUTTY COAT:** Final smooth coat of plaster. (PDCA)
- QUICK DRYING:** A material with a relatively short drying time. (PDCA)
- RAW SIENNA:** One of the brown earth pigments. (PDCA)
- RAW UMBER:** A brown earth pigment, having a different chemical composition than raw sienna. (PDCA)
- RECOAT TIME:** Time interval required between applications of successive coats. (PDCA)
- RED LABEL GOODS:** Flammable or explosive materials with flash points below 80°F (26.7C). (PDCA)
- RED LEAD:** An oxide of lead--red in color--used as a rust-inhibiting pigment and as a source of lead in some driers. (PDCA)
- REDUCER:** A material which lowers viscosity but is not necessarily a solvent for the particular film former; thinner. (PDCA)
- REFLECTANCE:** The ability of a film to reflect or return the light that strikes the film. (PDCA)
- REFRACTIVE INDEX:** Refraction is the degree to which a ray of light passing through a material is bent. The Refractive Index of a material is measured on an instrument called a Refractometer. The higher the Refractive Index of a pigment, the higher is its hiding power when used in paint or enamel. (PDCA)
- RELATIVE HUMIDITY:** Indication in terms of percentage of amount of water vapor in a given volume of air at a given temperature, compared to total amount of water vapor the air could hold at the given temperature. (PDCA)
- REMOVERS:** A solvent designed to soften old paint and varnish films and facilitate their removal. Removers usually contain wax or some similar material to slow down evaporation of solvent and to prevent them from running off vertical surfaces. (PDCA)
- REPAINTING:** A complete painting operation including surface preparation. (PDCA)
- REPAIR OF SURFACES:** All procedures required to return the surface to a satisfactory condition for painting. (PDCA)
- RESIN:** A natural or synthetic material that is the main ingredient of paint and that binds ingredients together. It also aids adhesion to the surface. Examples of the many terms used to describe resins include acrylic, alkyd, epoxy, nitrocellulose, polyurethane, polyvinyl acetate, silicone, styrene-butadiene, and vinyl. (NPCA)
- RIDE THE BRUSH:** Bearing down on the brush to the extent that the paint is applied with the side of the bristles instead of the flag ends. (NPCA)
- ROLLER:** A paint application tool having a revolving cylinder covered with lambswool, fabric, foamed plastic or other material. (NPCA)
- ROLLER COATING:** (a) A process by which a film is applied mechanically to sheet material; the sheet is passed between horizontal rollers, one of which is kept coated with a film of liquid varnish, enamel or lacquer. (b) The application of paint by

- means of a hand-operated roller to wall surfaces, etc. (PDCA)
- ROOF COATING:** An asphalt material designed for application to asphalt roofs. It may be straight asphalt, or it may contain asbestos and similar materials. Some types are colored with aluminum or other pigments. (PDCA)
- ROPEY:** Paint does not flow on evenly, dries with slight ridges. (PDCA)
- ROSIN:** A resin obtained from pine trees containing principally isomers of abietic acid. Wood rosin is obtained from stump or dead wood, using steam distillation. Gum rosin is obtained from the living tree. (PDCA)
- ROTTENSTONE:** A brown siliceous stone used as an abrasive. Similar in nature to pumice stone, though softer in texture. (PDCA)
- RUBBER:** Natural or synthetic rubber, as such, is rarely used in coatings although certain specialized types such as Neoprene, appear occasionally. A material similar to synthetic rubber is widely used in latexes, and certain processed rubbers, chlorinated, cyclized, etc., are used in masonry paints and industrial maintenance products. (PDCA)
- RUBBING OIL:** Neutral, medium-heavy mineral oil used as a lubricant for pumice stone in rubbing varnish, also lacquer. (PDCA)
- RUBBING VARNISH:** A hard-drying varnish which may be rubbed with an abrasive and water or oil to a uniform leveled surface. (PDCA)
- RUNS:** Also known as "sags" or "curtains". Irregularities of a surface due to uneven flow, frequently due to application of a coat that is too heavy and not brushed out well. (PDCA)
- RUST:** The coating of red or yellow oxides of iron produced when iron or steel is exposed to a humid atmosphere. Not to be confused with "white rust", a term loosely used to describe corrosion products of certain nonferrous metals. (PDCA)
- RUST BLOOM:** Discoloration indicating the beginning of rusting. (PDCA)
- RUSTING:** Corrosion of iron resulting in the formation of products on the surface consisting largely of hydrous ferric oxide. (PDCA)
- RUST-INHIBITIVE WASHES:** Solutions which etch the metal and form a dull gray coating of uniformly fine texture, thus producing rust-inhibitive surface receptive to priming coat. (PDCA)
- RUST PREVENTIVE PAINT OR PRIMER:** The first coat of paint applied directly to iron or steel structures to slow down or prevent rusting. (NPCA)
- SSPC:** Steel Structures Painting Council. (PDCA)
- SAGS:** Excessive flow, causing runs or sagging in paint film during application. Usually caused by applying too heavy a coat of paint or thinning too much. (NPCA)
- SAL SODA:** Crystallized sodium carbonate. Used for making cleaning solutions to remove grease and grime from old painted surfaces. (PDCA)
- SAND DOWN:** Remove gloss of old finish prior to painting. (PDCA)
- SAND FINISH:** Rough finish plaster wall. (PDCA)
- SANDBLAST:** Blast cleaning using sand as an abrasive. (PDCA)
- SANDING:** Smoothing of a surface, by hand or machine, to enable production of a better final finish. (PDCA)
- SANDING SEALER:** A type of lacquer acting as seal coating over applied wood filler. It is sanded prior to application of finishing lacquer. (PDCA)
- SANDY FINISH:** A surface condition having the appearance of sandpaper, may result from overspray. (PDCA)
- SANDING SURFACER:** A heavily pigmented finishing material used for building the surface to a smooth condition. It is sanded after drying. (NPCA)
- SAPONIFICATION:** The reaction of basic materials such as metal oxides or hydroxides with organic acids (as in oils and fats) to form soaps. (PDCA)
- SATIN FINISH:** When a dried paint film does not have a full luster, but has one resembling the luster of satin, it is said to have a satin finish. (PDCA)
- SCALE:** Rust occurring in thin layers. (PDCA)
- SCALING:** An evidence of paint failure which is the last stage of cracking. Moisture entering the cracks in the paint film destroys its adhesive property, and results in the breaking or scaling of the paint. (PDCA)
- SCRUBBABILITY:** The ability of a paint film to withstand scrubbing and cleaning with water, soap and other household cleaning agents. (NPCA)
- SCUFFING:** Excessive sanding can cause scuffing of either the gypsum wall-board panel face paper or the joint tape itself. These scuff marks should be covered with further treatments of compound, or the rough paper will absorb paint differently than smoother surfaces and leave a "fuzzy" finish. (PDCA)

- SEALER:** A thin liquid applied to seal a surface, to prevent previous paint from bleeding through from the surface, or to prevent undue absorption of the topcoat into the substrate. (NPCA)
- SECONDARY COLORS:** Colors made by combining primary colors. For example, the secondary color orange, is obtained by mixing red and yellow. (PDCA)
- SEEDINESS:** Small grains resembling undissolved gum in lacquer and similar material. (PDCA)
- SELF-CLEANING:** Term used to describe paint in which rate of chalking is controlled so dirt on surface will be washed away with accumulated chalk. (PDCA)
- SELF PRIMING:** Use of sand paint for primer and for subsequent coats. The paint may be thinned differently for the different coats. (PDCA)
- SEMI-GLOSS:** This term refers to the glossiness of a finish and is between eggshell and high or full gloss. (PDCA)
- SEMITRANSPARENT:** A degree of hiding greater than transparent but less than opaque. (NPCA)
- SET TO TOUCH:** An intermediate stage in the drying of a paint or varnish film which is reached when gentle pressure of the finger shows a tacky condition but none of the coating adheres to the finger. (PDCA)
- SETTLING:** The dropping-out of pigment and fillers from solution to the bottom of the containers. (PDCA)
- SET UP:** Drying to the state where the material no longer flows. (PDCA)
- SHADE:** Color in a tint. (PDCA)
- SHADING LACQUER:** Transparent colored lacquer used in shading. Applied with a spray gun. (PDCA)
- SHADOWING:** Being able to see the preceding coats through the last coat. (PDCA)
- SHEARY:** A finish which is not uniform in gloss after drying. (PDCA)
- SHEEN:** The degree of luster of dried finish film. (PDCA)
- SHEEN UNIFORMITY:** The even distribution of luster over the entire surface of an applied finish. (PDCA)
- SHELF-LIFE:** Maximum interval in which a material may be stored and still be in usable condition. (PDCA)
- SHELLAC:** Derived from a resinous substance called Lac. Used as a sealer and finish for floors, for sealing knots and other purposes. A natural resin, usually in the form of thin flakes. Ordinary shellac varnish is a solution of shellac in alcohol. (PDCA)
- SHINER:** A spot glossier than the rest of the area. (PDCA)
- SHIP BOTTOM PAINT:** Special product designed to prevent corrosion and fouling with marine life on the bottom of ships. (PDCA)
- SHRINKAGE:** Decrease in volume on drying. (PDCA)
- SIENNA:** An earth pigment of a brownish yellow color when raw; orange red or reddish brown when burnt. The color comes from the oxides of iron and manganese. (PDCA)
- SILICA:** Ground quartz. Used as an extender pigment. (PDCA)
- SILICATE PAINTS:** Those employing silicates as binders; used primarily in inorganic zinc rich coating. (PDCA)
- SILICONE:** A resin resulting from the chemical treatment of quartz rock especially useful as a waterproofing material. (PDCA)
- SILICON CARBIDE:** Abrasive crystals are shiny black; very hard and brittle. Made by fusing silica sand and coke in an electric furnace. (PDCA)
- SINKING IN:** The absorption of a considerable amount of the finishing material by the undercoat. (PDCA)
- SIZE:** A sealer. (PDCA)
- SKIM COATING:** Technique of applying a thin coat of finishing compound over entire surface of gypsum wallboard panel. This knocks down the nap of the paper and provides even sheen and absorption, sometimes called for under high sheen enamel paint systems. (PDCA)
- SKIN:** A tough layer or skin formed on the surface of a paint or varnish in the container. Caused by exposure to air. (PDCA)
- SKIPPY:** Said of paint too heavy-bodied for uniform application which causes the brush to skip on the surface, leaving some spots insufficiently coated and others with too heavy a coating. (PDCA)
- SKIPS:** Places where the journeyman painter has failed to cover with paint, or the brush has been too dry to apply the proper thickness of film. (PDCA)
- SLING PSYCHOMETER TOOL:** Simple testing device to determine both temperature and relative humidity in work area, factors which affect drying time and shrinkage of joint finishing compounds. (PDCA)
- SLIP:** Said of a paint which is easy to apply. (PDCA)

- SLOW DRYING:** Requiring 24 hours or longer before recoating. (PDCA)
- SOLIDS VOLUME:** Percentage of total volume occupied by nonvolatiles. (PDCA)
- SOLUBILITY:** Degree to which a substance may be dissolved. (PDCA)
- SOLUTION:** A liquid in which a substance is dissolved. (PDCA)
- SOLVENCY:** Measure of ability to dissolve. (PDCA)
- SOLVENTS:** Volatile liquids, usually of low boiling points, used in paints and similar materials to dissolve the various compounds of the vehicle. Some of them are used to dissolve the nitrocellulose used in making lacquer. (PDCA)
- SOLVENT RELEASE:** Ability to permit solvents to evaporate. (PDCA)
- SOLVENT WASH:** Cleaning with solvent. (PDCA)
- SOYBEAN OIL:** A semidrying oil obtained from soybeans. (PDCA)
- SPACKLING (or SPACKLING) COMPOUND:** A powder which is mixed with water and used as a crack filler, for building up rough surfaces preparatory to painting and for other surfaces. (PDCA)
- SPALLING:** The chipping or fragmenting of surface or surface coating caused, for example, by differential thermal expansion or contraction. (PDCA)
- SPARK TESTING:** Detection of holidays (flaws) by using a special spark testing tool. (PDCA)
- SPARKPROOF TOOLS:** Bronze beryllium tools. (PDCA)
- SPAR VARNISH:** A very durable varnish designed for severe service on exterior surfaces. It must be resistant to rain, sunlight and heat. Named from its original use on the spars of ships. (PDCA)
- SPATTER:** Small particles or drips of liquid paint thrown or expelled when applying paint. (NPCA)
- SPATTER FINISH:** Finish which provides a spattered or speckled effect. (PDCA)
- SPECIFIC GRAVITY:** Ratio of weight of a given volume to weight of an equal volume of water at the same temperature. (PDCA)
- SPECTRAL COLORS:** Band of colors produced when ray of sunshine is bent by glass prisms. (PDCA)
- SPECULAR GLOSS:** Mirrorlike reflectance. (PDCA)
- SPIRIT STAIN:** One made by dissolving a dye in an alcohol. (PDCA)
- SPIRIT VARNISH:** A varnish made by dissolving a resin in a solvent. It dries primarily by evaporation rather than by oxidation. (PDCA)
- SPOTTING:** The appearance of discolored spots on a varnished surface. (PDC)
- SPOT PRIMING:** A method for protecting localized spots. The only areas primed are those that require additional protection due to rusting or peeling of the former coat. (NPCA)
- SPRAY CAP:** Front enclosure of spray gun equipped with atomizing air holes. (PDCA)
- SPRAY HEAD:** Combination of needle, tip and air cap. (PDCA)
- SPRAYING:** A method of application in which the coating material is broken up into fine mist that is directed onto the surface to be coated. Atomization is generally effected by compressed air, but other methods are direct pressure (airless spray) and centrifugal force. (PDCA)
- SPRAY PATTERN:** Configuration of spray with gun held steady. (PDCA)
- SPREADING RATE:** The area to which a paint can be spread; usually expressed as square feet per gallon. (NPCA)
- STAIN:** A transparent coating which colors the substrate, usually wood, without obscuring the grain or other texture. (NPCA)
- STARCHING, BUTTERMILKING:** A mixture of starch and water, or buttermilk alone, which sometimes is applied as the final coat on high quality wall decoration. Since it is transparent, it permits the decoration to show through and when the wall becomes dirty the starch, or buttermilk, can be washed off without affecting the original decoration. The process can be repeated many times to protect the decoration. (PDCA)
- STARCH SOLUTION:** A solution for starching newly painted walls so that they can be more easily washed. (PDCA)
- STEAM CLEAN:** A cleaning process using live steam. (PDCA)
- STENCILING:** Placing a design on a wall or other surface by applying the finish through a template cut out of thin, flat paper or metal. (PDCA)
- STICK SHELLAC:** Shellac which comes in solid stick form. Used extensively for furniture patching. (PDCA)
- STIPPLING:** A finish made by using a stippling brush or roller stippler on a newly painted surface before the paint is dry. (PDCA)
- STREAKS:** A surface defect characterized by essentially parallel lines of different colors or shades. (PDCA)

- STRETCH:** A term used to describe the width of a section of a wall that is painted before moving the ladders or scaffolding. (PDCA)
- STRIKING IN:** A finishing material which softens the undercoats or sinks into them slightly. (PDCA)
- STROKE:** A single pass with a spray gun in one direction. (PDCA)
- STYRENE ACRYLIC:** A type of latex base water emulsion paint. (PDCA)
- STYRENE-BUTADIENE:** A type of latex base water emulsion paint. (PDCA)
- STYRENE RESIN:** A synthetic resin made from vinyl benzene. (PDCA)
- SUBSTRATE:** Surface to be painted. (PDCA)
- SUCTION:** The suction of a surface to be painted is due to its porosity which causes it to rapidly absorb newly applied paint. (PDCA)
- SUCTION SPOTTING:** Due to the absorption of oil in a new coat by porous areas in a previously painted surface. (PDCA)
- SULFATE:** A chemical compound in which sulphur and oxygen are combined with a metal or other substance in a certain ratio. Example: lead sulphate. (PDCA)
- SURFACE:** An area which is to be coated or the character of the area. The kind of finish obtained after the finished work has been rubbed. (PDCA)
- SURFACE CONDITIONER:** Preparatory coating applied to chalked, painted masonry surface for bonding chalk to undersurface. (PDCA)
- SURFACE DRYING:** Drying of a finishing material on top while the bottom remains more or less soft. (PDCA)
- SURFACE SEALER:** PVA, shellac, prime coat or proprietary sealer applied to gypsum wallboard surface, previous to spray texture application or ceramic tile application on moisture resistant gypsum wallboard panels. (PDCA)
- SURFACE TENSION:** Property of finishing material which causes it to try to shrink (PDCA)
- SURFACER:** A paint used to smooth the surface before finish coats are applied. (NPCA)
- SYNTHETIC RESINS:** A large group of resin-like materials produced synthetically by either polymerization or condensation of various chemicals. (PDCA)
- TACK:** The degree of stickiness of a paint or varnish film during the drying period. Oil paints and spar varnishes may retain an after-tack for several weeks after they are considered dry. (PDCA)
- TACK FREE:** A finished surface which is no longer sticky. (PDCA)
- TACK RAG:** Cloth impregnated with varnish used in wood finishing to remove abrasive dust from surface of wood, before applying finishing materials. (PDCA)
- TALC:** A hydrous magnesium aluminum silicate used as an extender in paints. It is also known as talcum powder and soapstone. (PDCA)
- TALL OIL:** A blend of resin and oil acids obtained as a by-product from the sulphate process for making paper. (PDCA)
- TAR:** A thick brown or black liquid with a characteristic odor--a residue from the distillation of wood, peat, coal, shale or other vegetable or mineral material. (PDCA)
- TEMPERA:** A water-thinned or water-emulsion paint. (PDCA)
- TENSILE STRENGTH:** Resistance to elongation; the greatest longitudinal stress a substance can bear without rupture or remaining permanently elongated. (PDCA)
- TERTIARY COLORS:** Colors made by combining colors on color wheel that are adjacent, like red and orange. (PDCA)
- TEST PANELS:** Small pieces of material usually wood or metal, on which surface coatings are applied for testing purposes. (PDCA)
- TEST PATTERN:** Spray pattern used in adjusting spray gun. (PDCA)
- TEST RACK:** A frame used to hold panels during the testing period. (PDCA)
- TEXTURE:** The roughness or irregularity of a surface. (PDCA)
- TEXTURE PAINT:** One which may be manipulated by brush, trowel or other tool to produce various effects, (NPCA)
- THERMOPLASTIC:** Mobile or soften under heat. (PDCA)
- THERMOSETTING:** Becomes rigid under heat and cannot be remelted. (PDCA)
- THINNERS:** Volatile liquids used to lower or otherwise regulate the consistency of paint and varnish. (PDCA)
- THIXOTROPIC:** The property possessed by certain gels of becoming liquid when agitated and coagulating again when left in an undisturbed condition. (PDCA)

- THOROUGH DRYING:** Uniform drying of entire film. (PDCA)
- THUMBNAIL PROOF:** Checking hardness of a finish by pressing thumbnail against it. (PDCA)
- TIE COAT:** Intermediate coat used to bond different types of paint coats. (PDCA)
- TINT:** A color thinned or let down with white. Tints are made by blending a full strength color with a white paint. (PDCA)
- TINT BASE:** The basic paint in a custom color system to which colorants are added to make a wide range of colors. (NPCA)
- TINTING COLORS:** Colored pigments ground in media compatible with paint vehicles, added in relatively small proportions to already prepared paints to modify their color. With the introduction of latex paints of many types, tinters have been developed that can be used with both organic solvent-thinned paints and with water-thinned paints. Such dual purpose tinters are known as "Universal Tinters". (PDCA)
- TINTING STRENGTH:** The coloring power of a standard paint or pigment. (PDCA)
- TITANIUM:** A metal which is the basis for the pigment, titanium dioxide. (PDCA)
- TITANIUM CALCIUM:** Paint pigment made by combining titanium dioxide of rutile type and calcium sulphate. (PDCA)
- TITANIUM DIOXIDE:** Compound of titanium. White in color. Used as a pigment in paints and enamels. (PDCA)
- TONER:** A nonextended pure organic pigment usually, although some toners are bases on such metals as copper, molybdenum, and tungsten. (NPCA)
- TOUCH-UP:** The ability of a coating film to be spot repaired (usually within a few months of initial painting) without showing color or gloss differences. (NPCA)
- TOLUOL (TOLUENE):** Lacquer diluent normally made by coal tar distillation. (PDCA)
- TONE:** A gradation of color, either a hue, a tint or a shade; as a gray tone. (PDCA)
- TONE DOWN:** The process of reducing visual prominence of an installation by the application of external coatings; blending of overall color scheme with the surrounding environment. (PDCA)
- TOO MUCH DRAG:** Refers to paint that has excessive "full" or "drag" in its application. (PDCA)
- TOOTH:** A term sometimes used by journeymen painters to describe the characteristics of a paint which provide good anchorage or adhesion for succeeding coats. They say it gives "tooth" to the surface. (PDCA)
- TOP COATING:** Finish coat. (PDCA)
- TOXICITY:** The quality of being poisonous; It usually affects painters through inhalation of fumes. (PDCA)
- TRAFFIC PAINTS:** Paints designed for highway marking. They must dry rapidly, exhibit good abrasion and water resistance and be suitable for application to either concrete or asphalt. They often contain coarse materials such as pumice or glass beads. (PDCA)
- TRI SODIUM PHOSPHATE:** A strong alkaline chemical used for cleaning, degreasing and dulling surfaces prior to painting. (PDCA)
- TRIAD COLOR HARMONY:** Harmony obtained by using colors from three equidistant points of the color wheel. Red, yellow and blue make up a triad. (PDCA)
- TRIGGERING:** Intermittent squeezing and releasing of trigger. (PDCA)
- TRIM ENAMEL PAINT:** Surface coating differing from ordinary house paint by faster drying, by having more gloss and showing fewer brush marks. Used mostly on trim, shutters, screens. (PDCA)
- TRUE COMPLEMENT COLOR HARMONY:** Two colors directly across the color wheel from each other are true complements. Examples are red and green, and orange and blue. (PDCA)
- TUNG OIL:** A drying oil obtained from the nut of the tung tree; also called China-wood oil. (PDCA)
- TURPENTINE:** A colorless, volatile liquid obtained by distillation of the oleo-resinous secretions found in living and dead pine trees; used as a paint thinner. (PDCA)
- TWO-COAT SYSTEM:** Two-coat paint application for initial painting. (PDCA)
- ULTRAMARINE:** Artificial lapis lazuli used as a blue pigment. (PDCA)
- ULTRA VIOLET LIGHT:** Often referred to as black light, is at the lower range of the light spectrum. This light is the portion of the spectrum which causes the destruction of paint films. (PDCA)
- UMBER:** A hydrated iron manganese ore running from olive shades in raw condition to dark rich brown shades in the burnt state. Used extensively as a pigment. (PDCA)
- UNDERCOAT:** The coat or coats applied to a surface after priming, filling, etc. or after the preparation of a previously painted surface, and before the application of a finishing coat. An undercoat

should possess good hiding power and a color leading up to that of the finishing coat, and should be suitable for use with other paints in the system. (PDCA)

UNIFORMITY: Not varying in gloss, sheen, color, hiding or other property. (NPCA)

UREA RESIN: A synthetic resin made by reacting urea and formaldehyde. Rarely used in trade sales products, but common in chemical coatings. (PDCA)

URETHANE RESINS: A relatively new synthetic resin characterized by excellent flexibility and chemical resistance. Used in materials similar to alkyds and also in catalyzed finishes. Also important in making foams. It is outstanding for marine finishes and floor finishes. (PDCA)

USEFUL LIFE: The length of time a coating is expected to remain in service. (PDCA)

VALUE: The lightness or darkness of a color. (PDCA)

VANDYKE BROWN: A brown pigment which consists of decomposed vegetable matter that has almost approached the coal state. (PDCA)

VARNISH: A liquid composition which is converted to a translucent or transparent solid film after application in a thin layer. (PDCA)

VARNISH STAIN: A varnish containing a stain. (PDCA)

VEGETABLE OILS: Oils obtained from the seeds or nuts of vegetable growth. Included are linseed, soybean, perilla, hempseed, tung, castor, etc. (PDCA)

VEHICLE: The liquid portion of a paint composed mainly of solvents, resins, or oils. (NPCA)

VENETIAN RED: A pigment consisting usually of calcium sulfate and red iron oxide. (PDCA)

VINYL: The name of a class of resins. Vinyl acetate is commonly used in latex paints. Polyvinyl chloride is used in some solvent-thinned coatings where high chemical resistance is called for. There are many other vinyl derivatives which appear in various specialized coatings. (PDCA)

VINYL COATING: One in which the major portion of the binder is of a vinyl resin. (PDCA)

VINYL COPOLYMER: Resins produced by copolymerizing vinyl monomers such as vinyl acetate and vinyl chloride. (PDCA)

VISCOSITY: The fluid thickness of an oil, varnish, paint or enamel. (PDCA)

VISCOSITY CUP: A device for measuring viscosity. (PDCA)

VOLATILE: Said of a liquid that evaporates. (PDCA)

VOLATILE CONTENT: Percentage of materials which evaporate. (PDCA)

VOLATILE THINNER: All that liquid portion of a paint, water excepted, which is volatile in a current of steam at atmospheric pressure. (PDCA)

VOIATILE VEHICLE: That portion of the vehicle, sometimes called "solvent", which evaporates as the coating dries and which holds the solids in solution. (PDCA)

WALL SIZE: Solution such as glue, starch, casein, shellac, varnish or lacquer, used to seal or fill pores of wall surface to stop suction, counteract chemicals or stains and prepare surface for paint, paper or fabric. (PDCA)

WARM COLORS: Colors in which red-orange predominates. This term is applied not only because of the association with fire, heat and sunshine, but also because they are actually warmer than cool colors. (PDCA)

WASH COAT: A very thin coat of finishing material, usually shellac. (PDCA)

WASHABILITY: The ability of a paint to be easily cleaned without wearing away during cleaning. (NPCA)

WATER BLASTING: Blast cleaning using high velocity water. (PDCA)

WATER SPOTTING: A paint appearance defect caused by water droplets. (NPCA)

WATER-THINNED PAINT: A paint whose thinner is mainly water. The binder may be a material that (1) requires water for setting, e.g., Portland cement; (2) which is soluble in water, e.g., casein; (3) which is emulsifiable in water, e.g., flat wall paint binders. (PDCA)

WATER WHITE: Transparent and colorless like water. (PDCA)

WAVE LENGTH: Computed distance between vibrations of light that produce visible color sensation on eye. In visible spectrum, red-orange has longest wave length; violet the shortest. Wave lengths are measured in millimicrons. Wave lengths longer than red-orange are called infrared. (PDCA)

WEATHERING: The effect of exposure to weather on paint films. (NPCA)

WET EDGE: Length of time a wall paint can stand and be brushed back into the next stretch without showing lap. (PDCA)

- WET FILM GAUGE:** Device for measuring wet film thickness. (PDCA)
- WET FILM THICKNESS:** Thickness of liquid film immediately after application. (PDCA)
- WETTING AGENTS:** Chemicals used in solutions, emulsions or compounded mixtures to reduce the surface tension and give greater ease of mixing and stability to the solution. (PDCA)
- WETTING OILS:** Products used to promote adhesion of applied coatings when all mill scale and rust cannot be removed. (PDCA)
- WETTING STRENGTH:** The maximum distance of penetration the vehicle is capable of delivering the paint or coating assembly in a vertical or horizontal direction on a specific substrate. (PDCA)
- WETTING TIME:** The time required for a vehicle to reach the end point of distance and penetration on a metal. (PDCA)
- WHITE BLAST:** Blast cleaning to the white metal. (PDCA)
- WHITE LEAD:** Compounds of lead used as white pigments in many types of paint. There are two types: basic lead carbonate and basic lead sulfate. (PDCA)
- WHITE WASH:** One of oldest paints. Principal ingredient is lime paste. Whitewash formula: Casein 5 lb., Trisodium Phosphate 3 lb., Lime paste 8 gal. Eight gallons of stiff lime paste are obtained by slaking 25 lbs. of quicklime in 10 gal. of water. Casein should be soaked in 2 gal. of hot water until softened. Trisodium Phosphate dissolved in 1 gal. of water is added to casein mixture and casein allowed to dissolve. This solution should be mixed with lime paste and 3 gal. of water. (PDCA)
- WHITING:** Calcium carbonate, limestone or chalk in pigment form. Used as an extender in paints and for making putty. (PDCA)
- WIPING STAIN:** Pigment oil stain. (PDCA)
- WIRE BRUSH:** A hand cleaning tool comprised of bundles of wires; also the act of cleaning a surface with a wire brush, including power brushes. (PDCA)
- WOOD TURPENTINE:** Turpentine that has been made by steam distilling Southern pine chips and stumps rather than distilling the pure gum gathered from live trees. (PDCA)
- WOOD FILLERS:** Fillers are of two kinds--paste and liquid. Paste fillers are something like a very thick paint and are composed of some solid powdered substance, usually silica or powdered quartz, mixed with linseed oil or varnish thinned with turpentine or benzine. (PDCA)
- WRINKLE FINISH:** A varnish or enamel film which exhibits fine wrinkles or ridges. Used largely for its novelty effect on manufactured articles. (PDCA)
- WRINKLING:** Development of ridges and furrows in a paint film when the paint dries. (NPCA)
- XANTHIC:** Containing yellow or pertaining to yellow color. (PDCA)
- XYLOL:** A solvent resembling benzol and toluol but of a higher boiling fraction. It is used as a diluent in lacquer and as a constituent of synthetic enamels, derived from distillation of coal tar and from hydroforming of a selected petroleum fraction. (PDCA)
- YELLOWING:** Development of a yellow color or cast in white, pastels, colored or clear finishes. (NPCA)
- ZINC:** Ore obtained from mines; used extensively as paint pigment. (PDCA)
- ZINC CHROMATE:** Yellow pigment stable to light and sulphur fumes, but with lower tinting strength than chrome yellow, and made by reacting zinc oxide with chromate solutions. It is also called "zinc yellow" and "buttercup yellow". (PDCA)
- ZINC DUST:** Finely divided zinc metal, gray in color. Used chiefly in metal primers, especially for galvanized iron. (PDCA)
- ZINC OXIDE:** A compound of zinc used as a white pigment in many types of paint. (PDCA)
- ZINC PHOSPHATE COATING:** Treatment used on steel to improve adhesion of coatings. (PDCA)
- ZINC SILICATE:** Inorganic zinc coating. (PDCA)
- ZINC SULFIDE:** Compound of zinc used as a white pigment in many types of paint. See Lithopone. (PDCA)
- ZINC YELLOW:** A yellow pigment, primarily Zinc Chromate. Used in metal primers for its rust inhibiting property. (PDCA)

- ABSTRACT:** A pattern or design not based on natural forms. (WCMA)
- ABSTRACT EXPRESSIONISM:** Considered to be the first indigenous American style of painting, although it was anticipated by Turner and by Kandinsky, among others. Notable for amorphous shapes on large canvases. (WCMA)
- ACANTHUS:** A motif derived from the large leaf of the low-growing acanthus plant. Used at an early date by the Greeks for architectural scrolls and on the capitals of the Corinthian column, it subsequently became an essential part of many fabric patterns. (WCMA)
- ACCENT:** Any device such as a bright color, or an object such as a small rug, that draws attention. (WCMA)
- ACRYLIC:** Refers to a family of plastic resins which may be used as pigment binder, for surface coating, or to make synthetic fibers. (WCMA)
- ADAM DESIGN:** The two Adams brothers, Robert and James, were Scottish architects who designed buildings, interiors and furnishings in England during the late 18th century. Their style is marked by a fresh, restrained use of classical motifs. (WCMA)
- AIR KNIFE:** Device to remove excess pigment at the time a wallcovering is "ground coated". (WCMA)
- ALL-OVER PATTERN:** The typical effect produced by a wallcovering. A pattern in which the units of design are evenly distributed over a surface, without undue emphasis. (WCMA)
- ANALOGOUS:** Similar or comparable in certain respects. Colors adjacent to each other on a color wheel, and thus forming a close, often vibrant relationship. (WCMA)
- APPLIQUE:** A design or ornament applied to another surface. In wallpaper, cut-outs applied to a plain, textured or figured background. (WCMA)
- ARABESQUE:** An ornamental structure either geometric or flowing in character. The term in its widest sense includes stylized arrangements of picturesque subject matter as well as all interlacings, grilles and fretwork. (WCMA)
- ART NOUVEAU:** The "new art" which flourished rather briefly in Europe at the end of the last century and has staged an extraordinary comeback in the late Sixties. It uses natural forms distorted into whiplash curves. Popularly known as Psychedelic art. (WCMA)
- AVANT-GARDE:** Literally anything in advance of the times. What is considered far out, or advanced, at the moment, may or may not become an accepted and even commonplace form of art in the future. (WCMA)
- BANDBOX DESIGNS:** Motifs taken from handboxes or hatboxes of the early 19th century which were covered with wallpaper, usually of a topical or romantic nature. (WCMA)
- BASKET-WEAVE:** Simulations of loosely woven fabrics, baskets or coarse matting. (WCMA)
- BLEEDING:** In printing, a spreading of pigment beyond the design outline, or the appearance of one color through another. (WCMA)
- BLOCK CUTTER:** A craftsman who, by hand, hammers into a roller the grass strips and felt from which the wallpaper will be printed. (WCMA)
- BLOCK PRINTING:** Also called hand-blocking. A process of printing with blocks on which the unit of design stands out in relief. Pear wood is traditionally used, and a different block is needed for each color. (WCMA)
- BOLT:** A roll of fabric or paper of a given length. (See Roll of Wallpaper). (WCMA)
- BORAX:** A colloquialism of the home furnishings trades, denoting cheap, or in bad taste. (WCMA)
- BORDER:** A narrow strip around an edge. A border wallcovering is used for trimming, or as a frieze, generally just under the ceiling. (See Soffit). (WCMA)
- BROKEN TWILL:** A tightly woven twill-weave cloth having a thread count in the range of 76 by 52 (warp by fill) and weighing approximately 8.6 ounces per square yard. (CSI)
- CALENDER:** Heavy mechanical rollers used to smooth, glaze and establish thickness of paper, cloth and other sheet materials. (CSI)
- CALENDERED STOCK:** A paper which has been compressed to make it smooth and glossy. Can be of any ground color. (WCMA)
- CANOPY CEILING:** A decoration composed of a ceiling paper, or a sidewall paper such as a stripe, in which the strips are cut in triangles and hung so that the apex will terminate in the center of the ceiling to produce a striking domed effect. (WCMA)
- CAPITAL:** The upper part of a column or pillar, an occasional wallpaper motif. (WCMA)

- CEILING PAPERS:** Plain, geometrical, small diaper, trellis or foliage patterns which look well on the ceiling from all directions. (WCMA)
- CELLULOSE:** An insoluble starch-like or woody substance taken from plants and used as the base for many synthetic materials, e.g., wall-paper paste. (WCMA)
- CENTER OF INTEREST:** In a room, the principal focal point, architecturally speaking, such as, for example, a fireplace. In a wallcovering design, the dominant motif, usually hung at eye level in the central area of a room to establish a starting point for hanging the rest of the wallcovering. (WCMA)
- CHAIR RAIL:** The topmost molding of a dado, placed on the wall at the height of a chairback as protection. (WCMA)
- CHINOISERIE:** Originally, European designs "in the Chinese taste." Now loosely applied to almost any oriental form of decoration. (WCMA)
- CHINTZ:** Papers resembling the printed cotton materials from India once known as "Chints", featuring brightly colored flowers. (WCMA)
- COLLAGE:** Basically a pasting technique whereby pictorial images or patterns, and pieces of colored, textured material are superimposed on each other. Sometimes described as the most characteristic method of Twentieth century art. (WCMA)
- COLOR PAN:** Containers spaced around a rotary press which transfer the pigment to a sieve cloth, which in turn transfers it to the printing roller. (WCMA)
- COLORWAY:** The combination of colors in which a design is printed, any given design usually being made in from two to six colorings. In a line of papers, each colorway is referred to as a "sheet" or "style". (WCMA)
- COLOR RUN:** The amount of rollage produced of a single color combination at any one time. When the same combination is run again, it receives a different "run" number. (WCMA)
- COMMEMORATIVE PAPERS:** Designs in which an historic event or personage is memorialized, as for example the well-known Minute Man documentary commemorating the Declaration of Independence. (WCMA)
- COMMERCIAL:** Manufactured in quantity to serve low-priced markets. (WCMA)
- COMPANION PAPERS:** A set of two papers designed and colored to be used together in the same or adjoining areas. One is often a large bold pattern, the other a texture or stripe. (WCMA)
- CONVENTIONAL DESIGNS:** Those in which the arrangement is regular and stylized, in contrast to more natural delineations of a subject. (WCMA)
- CORDUROY:** In wallpaper, a very narrow stripe imitating the fabric. The name is derived from the French "Corde du Roi" or King's Cord. (WCMA)
- CORNICE:** A horizontal molding or combination of moldings to finish the top of a wall. Paper simulating the same. (WCMA)
- CORNUCOPIA:** The Horn of Plenty filled with fruits and vegetables symbolizing abundance. (WCMA)
- CREWEL WORK:** Bright bold embroidery using worsted yarn, generally in a mixture of English and East Indian motifs based on the so-called "tree of life". (WCMA)
- DADO:** The lower part of the wall, customarily of chair rail height. Paper that provides this architectural division. (WCMA)
- DAMASK:** Patterns imitating stylized textile motifs in which foliage predominates. These "damasks" are most convincing when they use self-toned colorways, such as two shades of red. (WCMA)
- DESIGN:** A plan, or a single unit of decoration. (See Pattern). (WCMA)
- DIAPER:** Small units of design framed or spaced to create an all-over diamond-shaped pattern. (WCMA)
- DISCOUNTING:** Pricing system where the wholesale price is represented as a discount on the list or retail price. (WCMA)
- DOCTOR BLADE:** That part of the machine printing equipment which wipes off excess color as pigment is transferred from roller to the raw paper on the press. (WCMA)
- DOCUMENTARY:** A design based on a "document", i.e. an old paper or fabric dating from the nineteenth century or earlier. (WCMA)
- DOMINO:** Early French wallpaper made in small sheets, originally imitating marble, later patterned. (WCMA)
- DRILL:** A tightly woven twill-weave cloth having a thread count in the range of 68 by 40 (warp by fill) and weighing approximately 4.8 ounces per square yard. (CSI)
- DROP CEILING:** A form of decoration in which the ceiling paper is brought down to a suitable depth on the walls of a room and divided from the sidewall by a border or molding. Gives the illusion of a lower ceiling. (WCMA)
- EMBOSSING:** A raised effect created when metal rollers impress a design into the back of a wallcovering. (WCMA)

- ENGRAVING:** Machine-printing of wallpaper with etched-out rollers to obtain subtle and fine effects not possible with surface printing. (WCMA)
- FESTOONING:** Process by which paper is hung and dried after being printed. Sticks carry the paper, in long loops, through a "drying chamber." (WCMA)
- FILL:** In a woven fabric, threads running parallel to the loom and hence running the width of the fabric; in the textile industry, fill is called woof. (CSI)
- FLAME SPREAD:** The maximum distance the flame spreads along the length of the sample from the end of the igniting flame determined by observation. The flame spread factor is derived from expressing the flame spread for the tested material as a percentage of the flame spread for untreated red oak. (CSI)
- FLEUR-DE-LIS:** The stylized iris flower, adopted by the kings of France as a royal symbol. (WCMA)
- FLEXIBLE WALLCOVERINGS:** Those which are pliable such as paper, man-made vinyls and fabrics, as opposed to "liquid" wall coatings, such as paint, or "rigid" like wood paneling or other solid wall products such as Formica or ceramic tile. (WCMA)
- FLOCK:** Wallcoverings imitating the surface of damask or cut velvet. Made by shaking finely chopped fibers over a pattern printed in varnish or some other sticky material. (WCMA)
- FLORALS:** Any wallcovering design featuring recognizable flowers and foliage. (WCMA)
- FLORAL STRIPES:** Striped patterns incorporating floral motifs. (WCMA)
- FOIL:** A very thin sheet of flexible metal on a paper or fabric back. Can be printed with transparent or opaque color and mottled to resemble marble, tortoise shell, etcetera. (WCMA)
- FLUTING:** Concave grooves carved on a surface to decorate it. They are normally parallel, but sometimes, as on twisted columns, spiral. (WCMA)
- FRET:** A geometric band or border motif, consisting of interlacing or interlocking lines. Also known as a "key" or meander pattern. (WCMA)
- FRIEZE:** A type of wallpaper popular in the early 1900's. Generally a pictorial border which ran above door height, or, in dining rooms, above the plate rail. (WCMA)
- FUEL CONTRIBUTED:** A time-temperature curve developed by plotting time versus temperature, measured by a thermocouple located at the 23 foot point (vent end) of the test furnace. The fuel contributed factor is derived by expressing the net area under the curve for the tested material as a percentage of the net area under the curve for untreated red oak. (CSI)
- GRASSCLOTH:** Originally a hand-made product imported from Japan made by gluing woven native grasses onto a paper backing. Printed wallpapers or dimensional wallcoverings, especially vinyl, that simulate the same. (WCMA)
- GROUND:** Raw stock on which a coat of pigment has been applied before the top colors are put on. (WCMA)
- GRISAILLE:** Decorative treatment in which objects are rendered in tones of grey. Often intended to give the effect of sculptured relief, as in the famous wallpaper panels by John Baptist Jackson. (WCMA)
- GROTESQUE:** A fanciful hybrid human, animal, or plant form used as an ornamental motif. (WCMA)
- GROUND COAT:** The coat of pigment applied to the raw stock which acts as the background color for the design. (WCMA)
- HARLEQUIN:** An arrangement of parti-colored diamond or lozenge shapes recalling a masquerade costume. (WCMA)
- HERALDIC:** Designs whose motifs are inspired by some form of heraldry, such as crests or coats-of-arms. (WCMA)
- INK-EMBOSSSED WALLPAPERS:** Differ from regular embossed wallpapers in that the ink colors are applied at the time the paper is being embossed. (WCMA)
- JASPE:** French term meaning jasper. Papers that show shaded, fine, vertical lines, sometimes in irregular widths, reproducing the appearance of jasper stone cut across the grain. (WCMA)
- LAMINATION:** Process of building up in thin layers, then under heat and pressure with an adhesive added, bonding together as one product. (WCMA)
- LINE:** Merchandise belonging to one group or series offered by a manufacturer. In wallpaper, "name" collections appearing periodically every year or two. (WCMA)
- LINING FABRICS:** Muslin or canvas used underneath fine papers to avoid small cracks possibly opening up in a plaster wall and showing through. (WCMA)
- LINING PAPER:** Plain paper applied before the wallpaper. Assures a smoother surface and better adhesion. (WCMA)

LINKRUSTA: A permanent wallcovering coated with a wood flour and linseed oil mixture on a paper backing. Linkrusta patterns are molded rather than printed. (WCMA)

LITHOGRAPHED PAPER. Wallpaper made by the printing process used for billboards and posters. Lithography exploits the affinity of color for the greasy material in which the design is put on the roller. A "transfer" process. (WCMA)

LOTUS: One of the oldest of all decorative motifs, utilizing the water-lilies of the Nile river in every degree of stylization. (WCMA)

MACHINE-PRINTING: The method by which the bulk of modern wallpapers are produced. Machine-printing employs a rotary press and a series of cylinders or rollers to turn out wallpaper at high speeds. Raw paper stock is first given a coating of the ground color by a special machine, after which the paper proceeds in a continuous web to the rotary press where the top colors are applied and it is then festooned on specially heated drying racks. At the end of the line the paper is rolled up and chopped into commercial rolls. Printing rollers are of three kinds: brass and felt, routed out, or engraved. (WCMA)

MARbled PAPERS: Originally made by stirring colors mixed with gums in a flat pan and "floating" them on the sheets of paper that were used for box and chest linings, and the endpapers in books. Most of today's simulations of marble are made by machine or silk screen, although an occasional firm uses the old flotation method. (WCMA)

MATCHING: Act of hanging strips of paper so that the design will be in correct relation to the preceding strip. The types of match are as follows:

1. A "random match" is the simplest type of all. The pattern will look well no matter how one panel is placed in position in relation to the next one. Stripes, all-over textures, and grasscloth patterns are usually random matches.

2. A "straight match" is one where the pattern on one strip must be joined with a portion of a pattern on another strip in order to complete the pattern across the wall. After being hung, the design will be seen repeated, from strip to strip, at the same height from the ceiling line.

3. A "drop match" will have a portion of the pattern on each strip like the straight match. However, the pattern will not repeat itself at the same distance from the ceiling line across the various strips on the wall. Instead the matching point will apparently drop lower on each succeeding strip, but the pattern will be seen to match at the same horizontal points on alternate strips: the first and third, the second and fourth, and so on. Since there is a certain amount of waste with "drop" matching of large-scale patterns, professional paperhangers measure and cut adjacent strips from different rolls of the wallcovering, and plan to alternate them. Small, left-over pieces

can often be matched to go above doorways or under windows. Elaborate patterns occasionally match at every third or fourth strip of paper but this, the multiple drop match, is quite rare. (WCMA)

MEDALLION: A decorative element confined within a round, oval, square or rectangular outline. (WCMA)

MOIRE PAPERS: Papers having a "watered" silk sheen effect. (WCMA)

MONK'S CLOTH: A basket-weave material of cotton, jute or flax. Wallcoverings that simulate it. (WCMA)

MONOCHROMATIC: Of one color, sometimes in different light-and-dark values. (WCMA)

MOSAIC: A type of floor, wall and ceiling decoration in which pieces of colored glass or stone are set in cement to form a picture or pattern. (WCMA)

MURAL: See Scenic. (WCMA)

MUTED COLORS: Colors whose brightness has been lessened or moderated, often by their complementary color. Also called grayed colors or tones which, on losing most of their character as a color, are known as "neutrals". (WCMA)

NATURALISM: In design, the close imitation of natural forms and materials. (WCMA)

OATMEAL PAPER: Rough-textured wallpaper in tan, eggshell or pale mixtures of color which were very popular earlier in the century. (WCMA)

OP ART: Not necessarily a matter of optical illusion. This style embraces all types of disturbances created for the human eye, whether by lines, vibrating color, or moving objects. Victor Vasarely is the acknowledged "father" of contemporary Op Art. (WCMA)

OSNABURG: A lightly open square-weave cloth having a thread count in the range of 38 by 28 (warp by fill) and weighing approximately 3.6 ounces per square yard. (CSI)

OVERLAPPING SEAM: Method of hanging in which only one selvage is trimmed. (WCMA)

PANEL DECORATION: A type of wallpaper which flourished in the second half of the 18th century, related to the wood-paneled walls then in use. Wallpaper panels of the present day are thought of more as "spot" decorations. (WCMA)

PATTERN: A design which is repeated. (WCMA)

- PILLEMENT DESIGN:** Named for the 18th century artist Jean Pillement who helped to popularize chinoiserie. (WCMA)
- PLAIDS:** Designs consisting of crossed stripes, many of them originating in Scottish clan tartans. (WCMA)
- PLASTIC-BONDED WALLPAPERS:** Papers made with a protein size with a plastic added. They are washable, but subject to staining by certain liquids. (WCMA)
- PLASTIC-COATED WALLPAPERS:** Papers that are more washable and stain-resistant. A thick plastic coating increases the resistance and permits vigorous washing. (WCMA)
- PLASTICIZER:** An additive agent that imparts flexibility to otherwise rigid material. (CSI)
- PRE-PASTED:** Adhesive applied to the back of wallcovering by the manufacturer. Dipping in water before hanging activates the paste. (WCMA)
- PRE-TRIMMED PAPERS (TRIMMED PAPERS):** Rolls of wallpaper from which selvage has been trimmed at factory. (WCMA)
- PRIMARY COLORS:** The three pigments, red, yellow and blue, which cannot be produced by any mixture of other pigments. (WCMA)
- PRINT ROLLER:** In machine printing, the cylinders on which a design is "cut". A different cylinder is used for each color in the design and these are disposed around the huge drum of the rotary press which applies the top colors of the design. Rollers are of three types: brass and felt, made by hand-hammering small pieces of brass and felt into a hardwood cylinder to form the design; routed, made by a machine which cuts away from a metal roller everything but the areas to be printed; and engraved, made by incising the design by hand with punches into a copper cylinder. Some engraved rollers, such as textures, are made by a photo-electric process. (WCMA)
- PRODUCTION RUN:** Production of one pattern in one combination of colors from the beginning to end on one machine. (See Color Run). (WCMA)
- PUTTER-ON:** Craftsman who traces final hand-colored sketch issuing from design studio to series of acetate sheets, and from these onto set of rollers, each tracing being broken down to that part of design in a given color. (WCMA)
- RAILROADING:** The horizontal rather than vertical application of a wallcovering or the use, horizontally, of an upholstery fabric. (WCMA)
- RAW STOCK:** Paper in large reels, as it comes from paper mill. (WCMA)
- REGISTER:** In printing which requires several color impressions, the guiding process that assures each color will fall in the right place. (WCMA)
- RELIEF:** A type of decoration accentuating the design by cutting away the background. High relief means noticeably raised design, low relief only slightly raised. In wallpapers, shadows can give the effect of relief. (WCMA)
- REPEAT:** The distance from the center of one motif of a pattern to the center of the next. (WCMA)
- ROLL OF WALLCOVERING:** A bolt, consisting of 36 square feet of wallcovering, of which 30 square feet is estimated as usable. Bolts come in single, double and triple rolls. (WCMA)
- ROOM LOT:** A sale unit consisting of enough rolls of a pattern for a given room. (WCMA)
- ROSETTE:** A motif formed by a series of petals or leaves arranged around a central point. These are conventionalized to form a circle, ellipse or square. (WCMA)
- ROUTING:** Process by which a design is put onto a cylinder by cutting away the background, rather than building it up, as in brass-and-felt rollers. (WCMA)
- RUNS:** Manufacturer's term applied to the number of times an individual paper is made. (WCMA)
- SCENIC:** A hand-screened, machine-printed or lithographed wall decoration, with a pictorial design that continues over two or more strips of paper, without a repeat. Scenics are frequently designed so that some strips will match with others in the set, thus permitting extension over a large area. Also called murals. (WCMA)
- SCREEN PRINT:** See Silk-Screening. (WCMA)
- SCULPTURED WALLCOVERING:** Products molded of solid (usually synthetic) material in which the texture and shadows are real. (WCMA)
- SEAMS:** There are three methods of joining seams in hanging wallcoverings. All three are satisfactory, but the "butt" method produces the smoother finished job and is most often preferred. The three methods are as follows:
1. To "butt" a seam, edges are fitted tightly together without any overlap. If the wallcovering comes untrimmed, selvages must be cut off at both sides of the roll. This leaves a flat, invisible seam, with no double thickness.

2. The "lap" method is where one strip is lapped over the selvage of another. Wallcoverings are usually hung from left to right, but your paperhanger (or you) will decide which is best for the room. In moving from left to right, the selvage will be left intact on the right and trimmed on the left. The clean edge will overlap and cover the selvage edge. This procedure would be reversed in hanging from right to left.
3. The "wire-edge" method is a version of the "butt" technique, but will overlap about 1/16 of an inch into the pattern, so that no wall shows through in case the butting is not perfect. Here also both selvages have to be removed. (WCMA)
- SECONDARY COLORS:** Result from combining two of the primary colors: red, yellow and blue. Pure pigments should produce the secondary colors which are orange, violet and green. (WCMA)
- SELF-TONE:** Wallcovering in which shades of one color are featured. Habitually used for damasks and in flocking. (WCMA)
- SELVAGE:** Either edge of a roll of wallpaper, carrying no design, and intended to protect the latter, as well as give instructions for matching or any other information. (WCMA)
- SEMI-AUTOMATED SCREEN PRINT:** Same process as Silk Screening, except that the printing is done partly by machine. (WCMA)
- SEMI-TRIMMED PAPERS:** Those in which the selvages of the paper are partially severed by perforation or scoring in the process of manufacture and may be easily detached by tapping the ends of the roll on the table or floor. Also refers to papers fully trimmed on only one edge. (WCMA)
- SHADE:** A color produced by adding a percentage of black to a pigment. See Tint. (WCMA)
- SHEET:** See Colorway. (WCMA)
- SHEETING:** A closely woven cloth having a thread count in the range of 56 by 56 (warp by fill) and weighing approximately 3.7 ounces per square yard. (CSI)
- SHIKI:** Oriental shantung silk glued to a paper backing. Imitations of the same in rotogravure papers or molded vinyl. (WCMA)
- SIDEWALL:** Main wall area to be covered with paper. Sidewall patterns are thought of as suitable for covering the walls of an entire room. (WCMA)
- SIEVE CLOTH:** A woolen blanket moving as a continuous belt which transfers colors from color pan to roller in machine-printing. (WCMA)
- SILK-SCREENING:** Also called hand-screening. A printing process for producing wallcoverings with the use of silk tightly stretched on frames, a separate screen being used for each color. Areas of the designs to be printed in a given color are left open, while the rest of the silk is treated with an insoluble coating. The ground-coated paper is then laid out on long tables and the operator moves from one pre-set point to the next, applying the design by passing a squeegee over the paint in the silk-screen frame. (WCMA)
- SINGLE ROLL:** Standard commercial length, containing 36 square feet of surface after trimming, regardless of width of paper. Wallpaper is usually put up in double or triple rolls, depending on width, but prices are quoted by the single roll. (WCMA)
- SIZE:** A sealer used to prepare the wall before paper is applied. (WCMA)
- SKIN:** An ungrounded, nonwashable, low-priced grade of wallpaper. (WCMA)
- SMOKE DEVELOPED:** Smoke is detected by a photo-electric circuit operating across the furnace flue pipe. A curve is developed by plotting time against values of light absorption (decrease in cell light output). The smoke development factor is derived by expressing the net area under the curve for the vinyl-coated fabric as a percentage of the net area under the curve for untreated red oak. (CSI)
- SOFFIT:** The underside of a beam or a structural part. In wallcoverings, border and soffit paper are the same. (See Border). (WCMA)
- SWAG:** A swinging or suspended decoration representing leaves, garlands, drapery or ribbons. (WCMA)
- STENCIL:** Method of applying a design by brushing ink or paint through a cut-out surface. (WCMA)
- STOCK:** Different qualities and grades of paper. Also the inventory on hand. (WCMA)
- STRAIGHT EDGE:** A ruler or zinc strip used by paperhanger to trim selvage off paper. (WCMA)
- STRIA:** A thread-like striped effect. (WCMA)
- STRIKE-OFF:** A proof of a design run off before actual production, in order to check quality of reproduction, colors, etcetera. (WCMA)
- STRIP:** A length of wallpaper cut to fit height of wall. A single section of the design, in a scenic. (WCMA)
- STRIPPABLE PAPER:** A chemically treated stock tough enough to resist tearing, with a special formulation which permits a release of the wallcovering from the adhesive. This makes it possible to

- remove an entire strip from the wall without wetting. It is referred to as "dry strippable". (WCMA)
- STYLE:** Generally, "good" design that displays craftsmanship and has lasting qualities. In wallpaper parlance, a synonym for "colorway". (WCMA)
- SULFITE:** Paper pulp made by removing non-cellulosic components of wood by chemical treatment to increase strength and whiteness. (WCMA)
- SURFACE PRINTING:** Conventional machine printing in which the raised or routed design on the roller is transferred to paper. (WCMA)
- SWATCH:** A sample. (WCMA)
- TEA CHEST PAPER:** Small geometrical patterns similar to those used in the Orient to package tea. (WCMA)
- TINT:** A color produced when a pigment is mixed with white. (See Shade). (WCMA)
- TOILE DE JOUY:** Refers to line-engraved landscape-with-figure patterns first printed in monotone on cotton or linen in the city of Jouy, France. By extension, all such patterns, many of them "commemorative" wallpapers from other countries. (WCMA)
- TOP COLORS:** Those forming the design against the ground color. (WCMA)
- TOPIARY:** Concerns an ornamental garden. The art of trimming and training shrubs and trees into unnatural, purely decorative shapes. (WCMA)
- TOTAL WEIGHT:** The combined weight of both backing and coating measured in ounces per square yard. (CSI)
- TRELLIS DESIGN:** Lattice-work, sometimes supporting climbing flowers. (WCMA)
- TRIMMER:** Machine or device that removes the selvage. (WCMA)
- TROMPE L'OEIL:** Literally "fool-the-eye". A sign that creates a three-dimensional illusion by means of shadow and graphic textures. (WCMA)
- TRUE:** Exact or level, as applied to walls. (WCMA)
- TURNOVER:** The cycle of depletion and replenishment of merchandise. (WCMA)
- VALUE:** Lightness or darkness of color. (WCMA)
- VINYL:** Man-made material which can be produced in solid, liquid or flexible form. In the manufacture of wallcoverings, vinyl is either a flexible film or a liquid. (WCMA)
- VINYL COATING:** Liquid vinyl applied to backing material, usually paper or fabric. After application, the product is passed through a heated oven to bond the two materials together. (WCMA)
- VINYL LAMINATE:** Vinyl laminated to either paper or a woven or nonwoven fabric. (WCMA)
- VINYL WALLCOVERINGS:** At present there are six types:
1. Vinyl laminated to paper.
 2. Paper laminated to lightweight woven cloth and vinyl coated.
 3. Vinyl laminated to lightweight woven cloth, natural or synthetic.
 4. Vinyl laminated to lightweight nonwoven cloth, natural or synthetic.
 5. Vinyl laminated to nonwoven paper/fabric web.
 6. A man-made base impregnated with vinyl. (WCMA)
- WARP:** In a woven fabric, threads running perpendicular to the loom and hence lengthwise in the material. (CSI)
- WEIGHT:** Expressed in ounces per square yard of finished vinyl-coated fabric. However, not all manufacturers express weight in this method; some prefer to express weight in ounces per lineal yard because material is sold by the lineal yard price. (WCMA)